

MAODERENE

ELENGRICARY HISTORY

rena revig 4 Comens









Class <u>F 178</u>
Book ... M149

Gopyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.





MACE-PETRIE ELEMENTARY HISTORY

By WILLIAM H. MACE

Professor Emeritus of History in Syracuse University. Author of "A School History of the United States," "A Primary History," "A Beginner's History," "Method in History and (with George Petrie) of "American School History"

and

GEORGE PETRIE

Professor of History and Dean of the Academic Faculty of Alabama Polytechnic Institute, Author (with William H. Mace) of "American School History"

Illustrated by

HOMER W. COLBY and B. F. WILLIAMSON

Portraits by JACQUES REICH and P. R. AUDIBERT

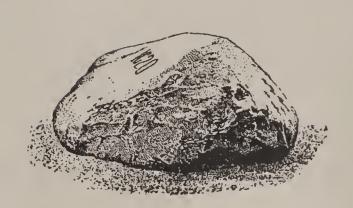


RAND MCNALLY & COMPANY

Chicago

New York

Copyright, 1923, by
RAND MCNALLY & COMPANY





APR 26 '23

© C1 A 7 0 5 1 9 3

no /

THE PREFACE

When does the child first begin the study of history? When he first detects the difference in meaning between a smile and a frown on his mother's face, he is beginning the mental processes used in history; that is, he is beginning to infer meaning from signs. From this time forward, the child is engaged in observing man in the process of acting, and these actions stand to the child as signs of certain mental states.

These sensuous images and the simple ideas gained from his observation enable the child to reconstruct the fairy story, the myth, or the legend. This observation is a universal process and it goes on from the cradle to the grave. It is the business of the teacher to stimulate it by seeing that the pupil carries on the testing of what he learns of men and institutions by comparing it with what he himself has seen.

The teacher should use the heroic stories in this book to impress upon the pupil's mind that life is a constant struggle against opposition and difficulties. It may be the struggle of man against man, party against party, army against army, or it may be the struggle of a man against some physical weakness, or perhaps against the lack of means of support. We can see it in the life of the great Lincoln—how he struggled against those twin obstacles, poverty and ignorance, and finally won; how Roosevelt struggled against timidity and a weak body, and how he conquered both, and how he won in his still more romantic and powerful conflict with men seeking their own against the public good. These conflicts epitomize the battle of life.

The pupil finds his greatest interest in history in the conflict between right and wrong as seen in the life of men. In watching the contest between two men or the conflict of two sets of ideas, he forms his own ideas of right and wrong, and he deals out praise or blame among his characters. Hence there is great need of level-headed teachers, and of the study of truly patriotic Americans.

To watch the struggle of great men for certain great causes produces a profound effect upon the character of the boy or girl. Hence the child should not be subject, in its immaturity, to the direction of inferior teachers or teachers lacking in patriotism.

This book contains stories of the World War. It shows how this nation, loving peace and hating war, threw two million trained soldiers into France to help the Allies win from the Germans. In doing this we paid a debt due France ever since Lafayette fought by the side of Washington, and at the same time we saved our own institutions. Just as the war against Spain united the North and the South, so the war against the Germans united the two branches of the Anglo-Saxon race in bonds of stronger friendship.

The World War showed that thousands of people in America had not awakened to the meaning of American institutions. The teachers of America, in dealing with the noble and self-sacrificing Americans, can do much to bring these people not only to love America's great men and women, but to love America itself. In this way the teacher works for the perpetuity of American institutions.

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD Leif Ericson, Who Discovered Vinland	PAGE I
EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA Christopher Columbus, the First Great Man in American His-	
tory	2
appointed	16
THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN	
John Cabot Also Searches for a Shorter Route to India and Finds the Mainland of North America	26
Spanish Main and "Singed the King of Spain's Beard". Sir Walter Raleigh, the Friend of Elizabeth, Plants a Colony in America to Check the Power of Spain	28 33
THE MAN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKES REGION, AND FOUNDED QUEBEC Samuel de Champlain, the Father of New France	
What the Dutch Accomplished in the Colonization of the New World Henry Hudson, Whose Discoveries Led Dutch Traders to Colonize New Netherland	43
Famous People in Early Virginia John Smith, the Savior of Virginia, and Pocahontas, Its Good Angel	48
Some Old-England Puritans in New England Miles Standish, the Pilgrim Soldier, and the Story of "Plymouth Rock"	55
John Winthrop, the Founder of Boston, and First Governor of the Colony of Massachusetts	63
THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE Peter Stuyvesant, the Great Dutch Governor	65

	PAGE
William Penn, the Quaker, Who Founded the City of Brotherly Love	_
James Oglethorpe, the Founder of Georgia as a Home for English Debtors, as a Place for Persecuted Protestants, and as a Barrier against the Spaniards	
Three Great Frenchmen Who Carried the Flag of France down the Mississippi and along the Gulf Coast La Salle, Who Pushed Forward the Work of Exploring the	
Mississippi Valley	
George Washington, the First General and the First President of the United States The "Father of His Country"	
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, WHO HELPED WIN OUR INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA Benjamin Franklin	
Patrick Henry and Samuel Adams, Two Famous Men of the Revolution Who Defended America by Tongue and Pen Patrick Henry, the Orator of the Revolution	120
THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD Generals Greene, Morgan, and Marion, the Men Who Helped Win the South from the British	140
John Paul Jones, Who Helped Win Independence by Fighting England on the Sea John Paul Jones	152
A Frenchman Who Came over the Sea to Help Washington Win Independence Marquis de Lafayette	
THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES	
Daniel Boone, the Hunter and Pioneer of Kentucky	161
George Rogers Clark, the Hero of Vincennes	107

DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC	PAGE
Eli Whitney, Who Invented the Cotton Gin and Changed the History of the South	182
Territory	
Lewis and Clark, American Explorers in the Oregon Country.	
Andrew Jackson, the Victor of New Orleans	
THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES	ţ
Robert Fulton, the Inventor of the Steamboat	213
Samuel F. B. Morse, Inventor of the Telegraph	**
Cyrus West Field, Who Laid the Atlantic Cable between America	
and Europe	
Crawford Williamson Long, the Doctor Who First Used Ether	
in an Operation	228
THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA	
Sam Houston, the Hero of San Jacinto	
John C. Fremont, the Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains	
THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD	0 -
Henry Clay, the Founder of the Whig Party and the Great	C
Pacificator	246
·	251
John C. Calhoun, the Champion of State Rights	257
ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE PRESERVER OF THE UNION A Poor Boy Becomes a Great Man	262
	203
President of the Confederacy	276
THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES	
Robert Edward Lee	285
OTHER HEROES OF THE CIVIL WAR	
	202
Ulysses S. Grant	204
	~94
The Typical American	297
THE PANAMA CANAL	
William Crawford Gorgas, the Man Who Drove Out Yellow Fever	306

		PAGE
	George Washington Goethals, the Man Who Built the Panama Canal	
Wo	odrow Wilson Who Believed in Making the World Safe for Democracy	312
Јон	On J. Pershing Commander of the American Army in France	325
Еы	son, Marconi, and the Wright Brothers: Men Who Made New Ideas Work Thomas A. Edison, the Greatest Inventor of Electrical Machinery	
	in the World	340
Wo	MEN WHO WERE LEADERS IN GREAT MOVEMENTS Early Advocates of Woman Suffrage	
Ani	DREW CARNEGIE. Maker of Iron and Steel and Founder of Libraries	356
RES	How Farm and Factory Helped Build the Nation	

A LIST OF THE MAPS

•	PAGE
The Finding of America	28
Early Settlements in Virginia and Maryland	37
The Routes Followed by Champlain	42
The New England Settlements	64
The Dutch Settlements	65
Routes of the French Missionaries and Traders Who Explored the Mississippi Valley	80
Scene of Washington's Campaigns in the South	99
Scene of the Campaigns in the South	142
Expeditions to the West and the Scene of George Rogers Clark's Campaign	179
The United States in 1803 after the Louisiana Purchase	192
The Scene of Jackson's Campaigns	205
Scene of Houston's Campaign	236
Map of the West after the War with Mexico	237
The Pathways of the Early Explorers of the West	238
The United States in 1850	256
The Confederate States	271
Scene of War around Washington and Richmond	290



MACE-PETRIE ELEMENTARY HISTORY

STORIES OF HEROISM

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD

LEIF ERICSON, WHO DISCOVERED VINLAND

r. The voyages of the Northmen. The Northmen were a bold sea-faring people who lived in northern Europe hundreds of years ago. Once, when on one of their voyages of adventure, the boldest sailed so far to the west that they reached the shores of Iceland and Greenland, where many of them settled. Among these were Eric the Red and his son Leif Ericson.

Now Leif had heard of a land to the south of Greenland from some Northmen who had been driven far south in a great storm, and he determined to set out in search of it. After sailing for many days he reached the shore of this New World. Because of the abundance of grapes that the Northmen found along the shore, they named the new land Vinland, a country of grapes.

Leif's discovery caused great excitement among his people, and ever after he was known as Leif the Lucky. After hearing his story of Vinland, some of them could hardly wait until winter was over, and the snow and ice broken up, so that they might send their ships out again.

This time Thorvald, one of Leif's brothers, led the expedition. On reaching land, as they stepped ashore,

I

he exclaimed: "It is a fair region and here I should like to make my home." Thorvald was killed in a battle with the Indians and was buried where he had wanted to build his home. The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but the Indians finally became so unfriendly that the Northmen went away and never came again.

It was too bad that Leif's discovery was not known to the rest of Europe until long after Columbus had made his.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The Northmen, bold sailors, settled Iceland and Greenland. 2. Leif Ericson reached the shores of North America and called the country Vinland. 3. The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but finally ceased to come on account of the Indians.

Study Questions. 1. In what new countries did the Northmen settle? 2. Tell the story of Leif Ericson's voyage. 3.

What did he call the new land, and why?

Suggested Readings. The Northmen: Glascock, Stories of Columbia, 7-9; Higginson, American Explorers, 3-15; Old South Leaflets, No. 31.

EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, THE FIRST GREAT MAN
IN AMERICAN HISTORY

2. Old trade routes to Asia. More than 450 years ago Christopher Columbus spent his boyhood in the queer old Italian town of Genoa on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. Even in that far-away time, the Mediterranean was dotted with the white sails of ships busy in carrying on the richest trade in the world. But no merchants were richer or had bolder sailors than those of Columbus' own town.

Genoa had her own trading routes to India, China, and Japan. Her vessels sailed eastward and crossed the

Black Sea to the very shores of Asia. There they found stores of rich shawls and silks and of costly spices and jewels, which had already come on the backs of horses and camels from the Far East. As fast as winds and oars could carry them, these merchant ships hastened back to Genoa where other ships and sailors were waiting to carry their goods to all parts of Europe.

Every day the boys of Genoa, as they played along the wharves, could see the ships from different countries and could hear the stories of adventure told by the sailors. No wonder Christopher found it hard to work at his father's trade of combing wool; he liked to hear stories of the sea and to make maps



THE BOY COLUMBUS

After the statue by Giulio Montverde in the Museum of Fine
Arts, Boston

and to study geography far better than he liked to comb wool or study arithmetic or grammar. He was eager to go to sea and while but a boy he made his first voyage. Afterward he often sailed with a kinsman, who was an old sea captain. These trips were full of danger, not only from storms, but from sea robbers with whom the sailors sometimes had hard fights.

While Columbus was growing to be a man, the wise and noble Prince Henry of Portugal was sending his sailors down the unknown west coast of Africa to find a

new way to India. The Turks, by capturing Constantinople, had destroyed Genoa's overland trade routes.

The bold deeds of Henry's sailors drew many seamen to Lisbon, the capital of Portugal. Columbus went, too, and there was made welcome by his brother and friends.

Columbus was now a large, fine-looking young man



A SEA FIGHT BETWEEN GENOESE AND TURKS

The Genoese were great seamen and traders. When the Turks tried to ruin their trade with the Far East by destroying their routes many fierce sea fights took place

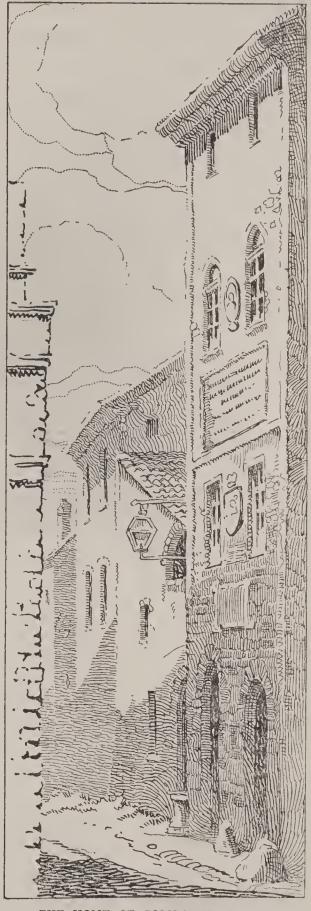
with ruddy face and bright eyes, so that he soon won the heart and the hand of a beautiful lady, the daughter of one of Prince Henry's old seamen. Columbus was in the midst of exciting scenes. Lisbon was full of learned men, and of sailors longing to go on voyages. Year after year new voyages were made in the hope of reaching India, but after many trials, the sailors of Portugal had explored only halfway down the African coast.

It is said that one day while looking over his father-in-law's maps, Columbus was startled by the idea of

reaching India by sailing directly west. He thought this could be done, because he believed the world to be round, although all people, except the most educated, then thought the world flat. Columbus also believed that the world was much smaller than it really is.

The best maps of that time located India, China, and Japan about where America is. For once, a mistake in geography turned out well. Columbus, believing his route to be the shortest, spent several years in gathering proof that India was directly west. He went on long voyages and talked with many old sailors about the signs of land to the westward.

Finally Columbus laid his plans before the new king of Portugal, John II. The king secretly sent out a ship to test the plan. His sailors, however, became frightened and returned before going very far. Columbus was



THE HOME OF COLUMBUS, GENOA

indignant at this mean trick and immediately started for Spain (1484), taking with him his little son, Diego.

3. Columbus at the court of Spain. The king and queen of Spain, Ferdinand and Isabella, received him kindly; but some of their wise men did not believe that the world is round, and declared Columbus foolish for



COLUMBUS SOLICITING AID FROM ISABELLA

From the painting by the Bohemian artist, Vaczlav Brozik, now in the
Metropolitan Museum, New York

thinking that countries to the eastward could be reached by sailing to the westward. He was not discouraged at first, because other wise men spoke in his favor to the king and queen.

It was hard for these rulers to aid him now because a long and costly war had used up all of Spain's money. Columbus was very poor and his clothes became threadbare. Some good people took pity on him, and gave him money but others made sport of the homeless stranger

and insulted him. The very boys in the street, it is said, knowingly tapped their heads when he went by to show

that they thought him a bit crazy.

4. New friends of America. Disappointed and discouraged, after several years of weary waiting,



LA RABIDA CONVENT NEAR PALOS Here, on his way to France, Columbus met the good prior

Columbus set out on foot to try his fortunes in France. Friends of the queen now earnestly begged her to help him. What if he should be right and France should get the glory? Isabella hesitated, for she had but little money in her treasury. Finally, it is said, she declared that she would pledge her jewels, if necessary, to raise the money for a fleet. A swift horseman overtook Columbus, and brought him back. The great man cried with joy when Isabella told him that she would fit out



COLUMBUS AT THE CONVENT OF LA RABIDA

Columbus explaining his plan for reaching India to the prior and to Pinzon, the great sailor

an expedition and make him governor over all the lands he might discover.

Columbus now took a solemn vow to use the riches obtained by his discovery in fitting out a great army which should drive out of the holy city of Jerusalem those very Turks who had destroyed the trade routes of his native city.



From the portrait by Antonis van Moor, painted in 1542, from two miniatures in the Palace of Pardo. Reproduced by permission of C. F. Gunther, Chicago

5. The first voyage. Columbus hastened to Palos. What a sad time in that town when the good queen commanded her ships and sailors to go with Columbus on a voyage where the bravest seamen had never sailed! When all things were ready for the voyage, Columbus' friend, the good prior, held a solemn religious service, the sailors said

good-by to sorrowing friends, and the little fleet of three vessels and ninety stout-hearted men sailed bravely out of the harbor, August 3, 1492.

Columbus commanded the "Santa Maria," the largest vessel, only about ninety feet long. Pinzon was captain of the "Pinta," the fastest vessel, and Pinzon's brother of the "Niña," the smallest vessel. The expedition stopped at the Canary Islands to make the last preparations for the long and dangerous voyage. The sailors were in no hurry to go farther, and many of them broke down and cried as the western shores of the Canaries faded slowly from their sight.

After many days, the ships sailed into an ocean filled with seaweed as far as the eye could see. Would the ships stick fast, or were they about to run aground on some hidden island and their crews be left to perish? The little fleet was already in the region of the trade winds whose gentle but steady breezes were carrying them farther and farther from home. If these winds never changed, they thought, how could the ships ever make their way back home?

The sailors begged Columbus to turn back, but he encouraged them by pointing out signs of land, such as flocks of birds, and green branches floating in the sea. He told them that according to the maps they were near Japan, and offered a prize to the one who should first see



COLUMBUS BIDDING FAREWELL TO THE PRIOR From the painting by Ricardo Balaca

land. One day, not long after, Pinzon shouted, "Land! Land! I claim my prize." But he had only seen a dark bank of clouds far away on the horizon.

6. Columbus the real discoverer. One beautiful evening, after the sailors had sung their vesper hymn, Columbus



THE SANTA MARIA, THE FLAGSHIP OF COLUMBUS

From a recent reconstruction approved by the Spanish Minister of Marine

made a speech, pointing out how God had favored them with clear skies and gentle winds for their voyage, and said that since they were now so near land the ships must not sail any more after midnight. That very night Columbus saw, far across the dark waters, the glimmering light of a torch. A few hours later the "Pinta" fired a joyful gun

to tell that land had been surely found. All was excitement on board the ships and not an eye was closed that night. Overcome with joy, some of the sailors threw

their arms around Columbus' neck, others kissed his hands, and those who had opposed him most fell upon their knees, begged his pardon, and promised faithful obedience in the future.

On Friday morning, October 12, 1492, Columbus, dressed in a robe of bright red and carrying the royal flag of Spain, stepped upon the shores of the New World. Around him were gathered his officers and sailors, dressed in their best clothes and carrying flags, banners, and crosses. They fell upon their knees,



THE ARMOR OF COLUMBUS

Now in the Royal Palace, Madrid

kissed the earth, and with tears of joy, gave thanks. Columbus then drew his sword and declared that the land belonged to the king and queen of Spain.

7. How the people came to be called Indians. When the people of this land first saw the ships of Columbus, they imagined that the Spaniards had come up from the sea or down from the sky and were beings from



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS

From the painting by Dioscoro Puebla, now in the National Museum, Madrid

Heaven. They, therefore, at first ran frightened into the woods. Afterward, as they came back, they fell upon their knees as if to worship the white men.

Columbus called the island on which he landed San Salvador and named the people Indians because he believed he had discovered an island of East India, although he had really discovered one of the Bahama Islands, and, as we suppose, the one known today as San Salvador. He and his men were greatly disappointed

at the appearance of these new people, for instead of seeing them dressed in rich clothes, wearing ornaments of gold and silver, and living in great cities, as they had expected, they saw only half-naked, painted savages living in rude huts.

- 8. Discovery of Cuba. After a few days Columbus sailed farther on and found the land now called Cuba, which he believed was Japan. Here his own ship was wrecked, leaving him only the "Nina," for the "Pinta" had gone, he knew not where. He was now greatly alarmed, for if the "Nina" should be wrecked he and his men would be lost and no one would ever hear of his great discovery. He decided to return to Spain at once; but some of the sailors were so in love with the beautiful islands and the kindly people that they resolved to stay and plant the first Spanish colony in the New World. After collecting some gold and silver articles, plants, animals, birds, Indians, and other proofs of his discovery, Columbus spread the sails of the little "Nina" for the homeward voyage, January 4, 1493.
- 9. Columbus returns to Spain. On the way home a great storm knocked the little vessel about for days. All gave up hope. But at last the "Nina" sailed into the harbor of Palos.

What joy in that little town! The bells were set ringing and the people ran shouting through the streets to the wharf, for they had long given up Columbus and his crew as lost. To add to their joy, that very night when the streets were bright with torches, the "Pinta," believed to have been lost, also sailed into the harbor.

Columbus immediately wrote a letter to the king and queen, who bade him hasten to them in Barcelona. As

he came near the city, a large company of fine people rode out to give him welcome. He entered the city like a hero. The streets, the balconies, the doors, the windows, the very housetops were crowded with happy people eager to catch sight of him.

In a great room of the palace, Ferdinand and Isabella



THE RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS AT BARCELONA

From the celebrated painting by the distinguished Spanish artist, Ricardo Balaca

had placed their throne. Into this room marched Columbus, surrounded by the noblest people of Spain, but none more noble looking than the hero. The king and queen arose and Columbus fell upon his knees and kissed their hands. They gave him a seat near them and bade him tell the strange story of his wonderful voyage.

When he had finished, the king and queen fell upon their knees and raised their hands in thanksgiving. All the people did the same, and a great choir filled the room with a song of praise. The reception was now over and



COLUMBUS IN CHAINS

After the clay model by the Spanish sculpior,
Vallmitjiana, at Havana

the people, shouting and cheering, followed Columbus to his home. How like a dream it must have seemed to Columbus who, only a year before, in threadbare clothes, was begging bread at the monastery near Palos!

But all Spain was on fire for another expedition.

Every seaport was now anxious to furnish ships, and every bold sailor was eager to go. In a few months a fleet of seventeen fine ships and fifteen hundred people

sailed away under the command of Columbus (1493) to search for the rich cities of their dreams. After four years of exploration among the islands that soon after began to be called the West Indies, Columbus sailed back to Spain greatly disappointed. He had found no rich cities nor mines of gold and silver.



THE HOUSE IN WHICH COLUMBUS DIED

This house is in Valladolid, Spain, and stands in a street named after the great discoverer

11. The third and fourth voyages. On his third voyage (1498) Columbus sailed along the northern shores of South

America. When he reached the West Indies, the Spaniards who had settled there refused to obey him. They seized him, put him in chains, and sent him back to Spain. But the good queen set Columbus free and sent him on his fourth voyage (1502). He explored the coast of what is now Central America, but afterward met shipwreck on the island of Jamaica. He returned to Spain a broken-hearted man because he had failed to find the fabled riches of India. He died soon afterward, not knowing that he had discovered a new world.

PONCE DE LEON, WHO SOUGHT A MARVELOUS LAND AND WAS DISAPPOINTED

America they were told strange stories by the Indians about many marvelous places. Perhaps most wonderful of all was the story of Bimini, where every day was perfect and every one was happy. Here was also the magic fountain which would make old men young once more, and keep young men from growing old.

When Columbus sailed to America for the second time he brought with him a brave and able soldier, named Ponce de Leon. De Leon spent many years on the new continent fighting with the Indians for his king. After a time he was made governor of Porto Rico. While thus serving his country he too heard the story of this wonderful land which no white man had explored. Like most Spaniards, he loved adventure. He was also weary of the cares of his office, and soon resolved to find this land and to explore it.

In the spring of 1513 De Leon set sail with three ships from Porto Rico. Somewhere to the north lay this land

of perfect happiness. Northward he steered for many days, past lovely tropical islands. At last, on Easter Sunday, an unknown shore appeared. On its banks there grew splendid trees. Flowers bloomed everywhere, and clear streams came gently down to the sea. De Leon named the new land Florida and took possession of it for the king of Spain.

Various duties kept him away from the new land for eight years after its discovery. In 1521 he again set out from Porto Rico, with priests and soldiers, and amply provided with cattle and horses and goods. He wrote to the king of Spain: "Now I return to that island, if it please God's will, to settle it." He was an old man then and hoped to found a peaceful and prosperous colony of which he was to be governor. But Indians attacked his settlement and sickness laid low many of his men. He had been in Florida only a short time when he himself was wounded in a fight with the Indians. Feeling that he would soon die, he hastily set sail with all his men for Cuba, where he died shortly after.

De Leon had failed to find the wonderful spring and returned older than when he came. He had failed even to establish the colony of which he was to be governor. But De Leon did discover a new and great land which is now one of the states of the Union. To him also goes the honor of having been the first man to make a settlement in what is now the United States.

CORTÉS, WHO FOUND THE RICH CITY OF MEXICO

13. Cortés invades Mexico. Foremost among Spanish soldiers was Hernando Cortés, who, in 1519, sailed

with twelve ships from Cuba to the coast of what is now Mexico. His soldiers and sailors were hardly on land

when he sank every one of his ships. His men now had to fight. They wore coats of iron, were armed with swords and guns, and had a few cannon and horses. Every few miles

they saw villages, and now and then cities. The Indians wore cotton clothes, and in their ears and around their necks and their ankles they had gold and silver ornaments. The Spaniards could hardly keep their hands off these ornaments, they were so eager for gold. They were



THE ARMOR OF CORTÉS

Now in the museum of Madrid

ing went on, but

not a single

now sure that the rich cities, which Columbus had hoped to find, and which every Spaniard fully believed would be found, were near at hand.

The people of Mexico had neither guns nor swords, but they were brave.

Near the first large city, thousands upon thousands of fiercely painted warriors, wearing leather shields, rushed upon the little band of Spaniards. For two days the fight-

HOUSE OF CORTÉS, COYOACAN, MEXICO

Over the main doorway are graven the arms of the Conqueror, who lived here while the building of Coyoacan, which is older than the City of Mexico, went on

Spaniard was killed. The arrows of the Indians could not pierce iron coats, but the sharp Spanish swords could



HERNANDO CORTÉS

From the portrait painted by Charles Wilson Peale, now in Independence Hall,
Philadelphia

easily cut leather shields. The simple natives thought they must be fighting with gods instead of men, and gave up the battle.

Day after day Cortés marched on until a splendid valley broke upon his view. His men now saw a wonderful sight; cities built on lakes, where canals took the place of streets and where canoes carried people from place to place. It all seemed like a dream. But they hastened forward to the great capital city. It, too,

was built on a lake, larger than any seen before, and could be reached only along three great roads of solid stonework.

These roads ran to the center of the city where stood, in a great square, a wonderful temple. The top of this temple could be reached by one hundred and fourteen stone steps running around the outside. The city contained sixty thousand people, and there were many stone buildings, on the flat roofs of which the natives had beautiful flower gardens.

Montezuma, the Indian ruler, received Cortes and his men very politely, and gave the officers a house near the great temple. But Cortés was in danger. What if the Indians should rise against him? To guard against this danger, Cortés compelled Montezuma to live in the Spanish quarters. The people did not like to see their beloved ruler a prisoner in his own city.

But no outbreak came until the Spaniards, fearing an attack, fell upon the Indians, who were holding a religious festival, and killed hundreds of them. The Indian council immediately chose Montezuma's brother to be ruler and the whole city rose to drive out the now hated Spaniards. The streets and even the house tops were filled with angry warriors. Cortés compelled Montezuma to stand upon the roof of the Spanish fort and command his people to stop fighting.



CORTÉS BEFORE MONTEZUMA

After the original painting by the Mexican artist, J. Ortega, now in the National
Gallery of San Carlos, Mexico

But he was ruler no longer. He was struck down by his own warriors, and died in a few days, a brokenhearted man. After several days of hard fighting, Cortés and his men tried to get out of the city, but the Indians



GUATEMOTZIN

The nephew of Montezuma and the last Indian emperor of Mexico. After the statue by Don Francisco Jimenez

Spanish settlers.

fell on the little army and killed more than half of the Spanish soldiers before they could get away.

of jealousy a Spanish army was sent to bring Cortés back to Cuba. By capturing this army Cortés secured more soldiers. Once more he marched against the city. What could bows and arrows and spears and stones do against the terrible horsemen and their great swords, or against the Spanish foot soldiers with their muskets and cannon? At length the great Indian city was almost destroyed, but thousands of its brave defenders were

killed before the fighting ceased (1521). From this time on, the country gradually filled with

several years, Cortés longed to see his native land once more. He set sail, and reached the little port of Palos from which, many years before, the great Columbus had sailed in search of the rich cities of the Far East. Here now was the very man who had found the cities and had returned to tell the story to his

er

AN INDIAN CORN BIN, TLAXCALA
These are community or public bins,
stand in the open roadway, and
are still fashioned as in
the days of Cortés

king and countrymen. All along the journey to the king, the people now crowded to see Cortés, as they had once crowded to see Columbus.

Cortés afterwards returned to Mexico, where he spent a large part of his fortune in trying to improve the country. The Spanish king permitted great wrong to be done to Cortés and, like Columbus, the discoverer, Cortés, the conqueror, died neglected by the king whom he had made so rich. For three hundred years the mines of Mexico poured a constant stream of gold and silver into the lap of Spain.

DE SOTO, THE DISCOVERER OF THE MISSISSIPPI

16. The expedition to Florida. Hernando de Soto was a famous Spanish soldier. He made up his mind to lead an expedition through Florida. The news stirred all Spain. Many nobles sold their lands to fit out their sons to fight under so great a leader.

The Spanish settlers of Cuba gave a joyful welcome to De Soto and to the brave men from the homeland. After many festivals and religious ceremonies, nine vessels, carrying many soldiers, twelve priests, many hundred horses, and a herd of swine, sailed for Florida (1539).

How wonderful it must have seemed to the Indians as the men and horses clad in steel armor landed! There were richly colored banners, beautiful crucifixes, and many things never before seen by the Indians. But this turned out to be the most cruel expedition yet planned.

Wherever the Spaniards marched Indians were seized as slaves and made to carry the baggage and do the hard work. If the Indian guides were false, they were burned at the stake or were torn to pieces by bloodhounds. Hence the Indians feared the Spaniards, and Indian guides often misled the Spanish soldiers on purpose to



After an engraving to be found in the works of the great Spanish historian, Herrera

save the guides' own tribes from harm.

De Soto fought his way through forests and swamps to the head of Apalachee Bay, where he spent the winter. In the spring a guide led the army into what is now Georgia, in search of a country supposed to be rich in gold and ruled by a woman. The soldiers suffered and grumbled, but De Soto only turned the march farther northward.

The Appalachian Mount-

ains caused them to turn south again until they reached the village of Mavilla (Mobile), where the Indians rushed on them in great numbers and tried to crush the army. But Spanish swords and Spanish guns won the day against Indian arrows and Indian clubs. De Soto lost more than a hundred men, nearly fifty horses, and the baggage of his entire army, yet he boldly refused to send to the coast for the men and supplies waiting for him there.

17. The discovery of the Mississippi. Again De Soto's men followed him northward, this time into what we know as northern Mississippi, where the second winter was spent in a deserted Indian village. In the spring he demanded two hundred Indians to carry baggage, but the chief and his men one night stole into camp, set

fire to their own rude houses, gave the war whoop, frightened many horses into running away, and killed a number of the Spaniards.

The army then marched westward for many days, wading swamps and wandering through forests so dense that at times they could not see the sun. At last, in 1541, a river greater than any the Spaniards had ever seen was reached. It was the Mississippi, more than a mile wide, rushing swiftly on at full flood toward the Gulf.

On barges made by their own hands, De Soto and his men crossed to the west bank of the broad stream. There they marched northward, probably as far as the region now known as Missouri, and then westward two hundred miles. Nothing but hardships met them on every hand. In the spring of 1542, the little army marched southeast and came upon the Mississippi again.

De Soto was tiring out. He grew sad and asked the

Indians how far it was to the sea. It was too far for the bold leader. A fever seized him, and after a few days he died, and at dead of night his companions buried him in the bosom of the great river he had discovered.



DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MIGHTY MISSISSIPPI

18. Only half the army returns to Cuba. There were bold leaders left in the army. They turned westward

again, but after finding neither gold nor silver, they returned to the Mississippi and spent the winter on its banks. There they built boats, and then floated down to the Gulf. Only half the army returned to tell the sad tales of hardships, battles, and poverty.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Columbus was born near the shores of the Mediterranean and trained for the sea by study and by experience. 2. The people of Europe traded with the Far East, but the Turks destroyed their trade routes. 3. Columbus was drawn to Portugal because of Prince Henry's great work. 4. Columbus thought he could sail west and reach the rich cities of the East. 5. After many discouragements he won aid from Isabella and discovered the Bahama Islands, Cuba, and Haiti. 6. The king and queen of Spain received Columbus with great ceremony. 7. Columbus made three more voyages, but was disappointed in not finding the rich cities of the Far East.

8. Ponce de Leon sailed from Porto Rico to find a land of which strange stories had been told—stories of riches and of a fountain of eternal youth. 9. He reached Florida on Easter Sunday, 1513. 10. Eight years later he returned to found a settlement. 11. He was attacked by the Indians, wounded, and forced to return to Cuba, where he died of his wounds. 12. His is the distinction of being the first white man to plant a settlement in what is now the United States.

13. Cortés marched against a rich city, afterward called Mexico, captured the ruler, and fought great battles with the people. 14. Cortés captured the city and ruled it for several years. 15. From this time on Mexico gradually filled with Spanish settlers.

16. De Soto wandered over the country east of the Rocky Mountains in search of rich cities, found a great river, the Mississippi and later was buried in its material.

Mississippi, and later was buried in its waters.

Study Questions. 1. Make a list of articles which the caravans (camels and horses) of the East brought to the Black Sea. 2. What studies fitted Columbus for the sea? 3. Why were there so many sailors in Lisbon? 4. How did Columbus get

his idea of the earth's shape? 5. What did men in Portugal and Spain think of this idea? 6. Tell the story of Columbus in Spain. 7. What is the meaning of the vow taken by him? 8. Make a picture in your mind of the first voyage of Columbus. Read the poem "Columbus," by Joaquin Miller. 9. Shut your eyes and imagine you see Columbus land and take possession of the country. 10. Why was Columbus so disappointed? 11. How did the people of Palos act when Columbus returned? 12. Picture the reception of Columbus by the people, and by the king and queen. 13. Why was Columbus disappointed in the second expedition? 14. What did Columbus believe he had accomplished? 15. What had he failed to do that he hoped to do?

16. Why did Ponce de Leon go in search of the new land? 17. What was the strange tradition about the country? 18. What did Ponce de Leon set out to do on his second trip?

19. Did he succeed? 20. What is his distinction?

21. Why did Cortés sink his ships? 22. How were Spaniards armed and how were Indians armed? 23. Describe the city of Mexico. 24. Who began the war, and what does that show about the Spaniards? 25. How did Cortés get more soldiers? 26. How did the people and king receive Cortes in Spain?

27. How was he treated on his return to Mexico?

28. Why were De Soto's Indian guides false? 29. Show that De Soto was a brave man. 30. How far north did the Spaniards go both east and west of the Mississippi? 31. Tell the story of De Soto's death and burial. 32. What proof can you give that the Spaniards were more cruel than was necessary?

Suggested Readings. Columbus: Hart, Colonial Children, 4-6; Pratt, Exploration and Discovery, 17-32; Wright, Children's Stories in American History, 38-60; Higginson, American Explorers, 19-52; Glascock, Stories of Columbia, 10-35; McMurry, Pioneers on Land and Sea, 122-160; Brooks, The True Story of Christopher Columbus, 1-103, 112-172.

Ponce de Leon: Pratt, Explorations and Discoveries, 17–23. Cortés: McMurry, Pioneers on Land and Sea, 186–225; Hale, Stories of Adventure, 101–126; Ober, Hernando Cortés,

24-80, 82-201.

DE Soto: Hart, Colonial Children, 16-19; Higginson, American Explorers, 121-140.

THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN

JOHN CABOT ALSO SEARCHES FOR A SHORTER ROUTE TO INDIA AND FINDS THE MAINLAND OF NORTH AMERICA

19. Cabot's voyages. When the news of Columbus' great discovery reached England, the king was sorry, no doubt, that he had not helped him. The story is that Columbus had gone to Henry VII, king of England, for aid to make his voyage. But England had a brave sailor of her own, John Cabot, an Italian, born in Columbus' own town of Genoa, who also had learned his lessons in voyages on the Mediterranean. Afterward Cabot made England his home and lived in the old seaport town of Bristol, the home of many English sailors.



CABOT TAKING POSSESSION OF NORTH AMERICA FOR
THE KING OF ENGLAND

On the stot where he landed Cabot blanted a large cross

On the spot where he landed Cabot planted a large cross and beside it flags of England and of St. Mark

He, too, believed the world was round, and India could be reached by sailing westward. Henry VII gave Cabot permission to try, provided he would give the king onefifth of all the gold and silver which everybody believed he would find in India.

Accordingly, John Cabot, and it may be his son, Sebastian, set out on a voyage in May, 1497. After many weeks, Cabot discovered land, now supposed to be either a part of Labrador or of Cape Breton Island.

He landed and planted the flag of England. Later, he probably saw parts of Newfoundland.

How John Cabot was treated by the king and people of England when he came back is seen in an old letter written from England by a citizen of Venice to his friends at home. "The king has promised that in the spring our countryman shall have ten ships, armed to his order. The king has also given him money wherewith to amuse himself till then, and he is now at Bristol with his wife and his sons. His name is John Cabot, and he is called the great admiral. Vast honor is



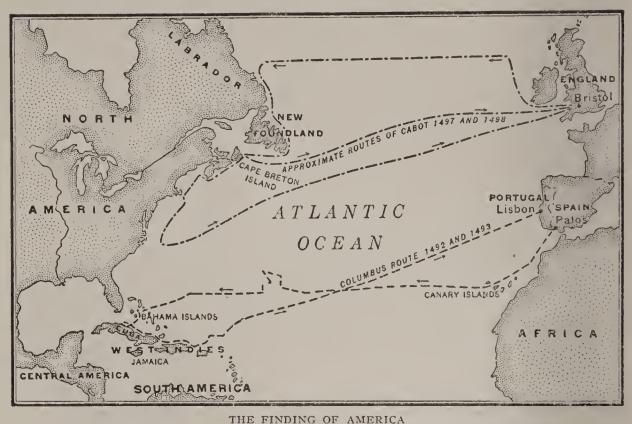
JOHN CABOT AND HIS SON SEBASTIAN
From the statue modeled by John
Cassidy, Manchester, England

paid to him; he dresses in silk, and the English run after him like mad people, so that he can enlist as many of them as he pleases, and a number of our own rogues besides."

Again, in May, 1498, John Cabot started for India by sailing toward the northwest. This time the fleet was larger, and filled with eager English sailors. But Cabot could not find a way to India, so he altered his course and coasted southward as far as the region now called North Carolina.

Now because of these two voyages of Cabot, England

later claimed a large part of North America, for Cabot had really seen the mainland of America before Columbus.



The first voyages of Columbus, the discoverer of the New World, and of Cabot, the first man to reach the mainland of North America

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, THE ENGLISH "DRAGON," WHO SAILED THE SPANISH MAIN AND "SINGED THE KING OF SPAIN'S BEARD"

20. The quarrel between Spain and England. After John Cabot failed to find a new way to India, King Henry VII did nothing more to help English discovery. His son, Henry VIII, got into a great quarrel with the king of Spain. He was too busy with this quarrel to think much about America.

During this very time, Cortés and others were doing their wonderful deeds. Spain grew bold, seized English seamen, threw them into dungeons, and even burned them at the stake. Englishmen robbed Spanish ships and killed Spanish sailors in revenge.

- 21. Sir Francis Drake. A most daring English seaman was Sir Francis Drake. From boyhood days he had been a sailor. He loved to fight the Spaniards on sea or land. Once, while on the Isthmus of Panama, he caught sight of the Pacific Ocean, which only Spaniards had seen before. Then and there he resolved that the Spaniards should no longer have it all to themselves.
- 22. Drake's voyage around the world. Four years later he carried out his plan. One ship was lost in a terrible storm. One turned back to England. But Drake kept on around South America and up its western coast. Near Valparaiso, his men saw the first great treasure ship. The Spanish sailors jumped overboard,

and left four hundred pounds of gold to Drake and his men. Week after week Drake sailed northward until he reached the coast of Peru.

Another great treasure ship had just sailed for Panama. Away flew Drake's ship, the "Pelican," in swift pursuit. For eight hundred miles, day and night, the chase went on. One evening, just at dark, the little ship rushed down upon the great vessel, captured her easily, and carried her to sea farther out of her course, for other Spanish ships had been

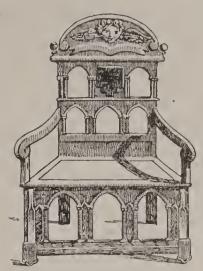


SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

From the original portrait attributed to
Sir Antonis van Moor, in the possession of Viscount Dillon, at
Ditchly Park, England

sent to catch Drake. What a rich haul! More than twenty tons of silver bars, thirteen chests of silver coin,

one hundredweight of gold, besides a great store of precious stones. When Drake set the Spanish captain free, he said: "Tell your ruler to put no more Englishmen



DRAKE'S CHAIR, OXFORD

to death, or I will hang two thousand Spaniards and send him their heads."

The three Spanish ships sent to destroy Drake overtook him, but they dared not attack him, and sailed back. The little "Pelican" continued northward, and spent the winter on the coast of California where Drake prepared her for the long voyage home.

He had sailed north as far as what It was made from the timbers was afterward known as the Oregon of the "Golden Hind" country—which he called New Albion

—hoping for a northeast passage to the Atlantic, but finally turned the "Pelican" toward the far-away islands of the Indian Ocean. Week after week went by. At last he made his way among the islands and across the Indian Ocean until the Cape of Good Hope was rounded, and the "Pelican" spread her wings northward toward England.

Drake reached home in 1580, the first Englishman to sail around the world. The people who had given him up as lost shouted for joy when they heard that he was safe. Queen Elizabeth sent for him and made him tell the story of his wonderful deeds over and over again. She gave him a title, so that now he was Sir Francis Drake. His ship, the "Pelican," was renamed the "Golden Hind."

23. Drake again goes to fight the Spaniards. Drake soon took command of a fleet of twenty-five vessels and

two thousand five hundred men, all eager to fight the Spaniards (1585). He sailed boldly for the coast of Spain, frightened the people, and then went in search of the "Gold Fleet," which was bringing treasures from America to the king of Spain.

No sooner had Drake missed the fleet than he made direct for the West Indies, where he spread terror among the islands. The Spaniards feared him so greatly that they called him the "Dragon."



QUEEN ELIZABETH MAKING DRAKE A NOBLEMAN

After the drawing by Sir John Gilbert. It pictures the scene that took place on board the
"Golden Hind" at the close of the great voyage. Queen Elizabeth visited Drake
in his ship and conferred knighthood on him for his great services to England

The Spanish king was angry. He resolved to crush England. More than one hundred ships, manned by thousands of sailors, were to carry a great army to the

hated island. Drake heard about it, and quickly gathered thirty fast ships manned by sailors as bold as himself.



More than one hundred twenty-five vessels sailed from Lisbon to conquer England, but only about fifty returned to the home port

His fleet sailed right into the harbor of Cadiz, past cannon and forts, and burned so many Spanish ships that it took Spain another year to get the great fleet ready. Drake declared that he had "singed the King of Spain's beard."

24. The Spanish Armada. The king of Spain resolved to crush England at one mighty blow. In 1588, the Spanish Armada, as the great fleet was called, sailed for England. There were scores and scores of war vessels manned by more than seven thousand sailors, and carrying nearly twenty thousand soldiers. Almost every noble family in Spain sent one or more of its sons to fight against England.

When this mighty fleet reached the English Channel, Drake and other sea captains as daring as himself dashed at the Spanish ships, and by the help of a great storm that came up, succeeded in destroying almost the whole fleet. No such blow had ever before fallen upon the great and powerful Spanish nation. From that time on her power grew less and less, while England's power on the sea grew greater and greater. Englishmen could now go to America without much thought of danger from Spaniards.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH, THE FRIEND OF ELIZABETH,
PLANTS A COLONY IN AMERICA TO CHECK THE
POWER OF SPAIN

25. Sir Walter Raleigh. Born (1552) near the sea, Raleigh fed his young imagination with stories of the bold deeds of English seamen. He went to college at Oxford at the age of fourteen, and made a good name as a student.

As he grew to manhood, the love of adventure drew him into the life of a soldier. Before he was thirty years old, he had been in France, Holland, America, and Ireland.

At this time Raleigh was a fine-looking man, about

six feet tall, with dark hair and a handsome face. He had plenty of wit and good sense, although he was fond, indeed, of fine clothes. He was just the very one to catch the favor of Queen Elizabeth.



THE BOYHOOD OF RALEIGH
After the painting by Sir John E. Millais

One day, Elizabeth and her train of lords and ladies were going down the roadway from the royal castle to

the river. The people crowded both sides of the road to see their beloved queen and her beautiful ladies go by. Raleigh pressed his way to the front.



SIR WALTER RALEIGH
From the original portrait painted
by Federigo Zuccaro

As Elizabeth drew near, she hesitated about passing over a muddy place. a moment the feeling that every true gentleman has in the presence of ladies told Raleigh what to do, and the queen suddenly saw his beautiful red velvet cloak lying in the mud at her feet. She stepped upon it, nodded to its gallant owner, and passed on. From this time forward Raleigh was a great favorite at the court of Queen Elizabeth.

26. Trying to plant English colonies. In 1584 Raleigh caused a friend to write a letter to the queen, explaining how English colonies planted on the coast of North America would not only check the power of Spain, but would also increase the power of England. That very year the queen gave him permission to plant colonies, and thus a better way of opposing Spain had been found than robbing treasure ships and burning towns.

Raleigh immediately sent a ship across to explore. The captain landed on what is now Roanoke Island. The Indians came with a fleet of forty canoes to give them a friendly welcome. After a few days an Indian

queen with her maidens came to entertain the English. "We found the people most gentle, loving, and faithful, void of all guile and treason," said Captain Barlow. His glowing account of the land and people

pleased Elizabeth that she named the country Virginia, in honor of her own virgin life.

One hundred settlers sent to the new colony, but they failed to make friends with the Indians. When Drake came the next Spring the settlers were glad to get back to England. They took home from America two food plants, the white potato and Indian corn. These were worth more to the world than all the gold and silver found in the mines of Mexico and Peru.

Raleigh's first efforts to found a colony in the new land failed. He had spent thousands of dollars, yet he would not give up.



INDIAN CORN

27. Roanoke colony. He immediately sent out a second colony of one hundred and fifty settlers. A number of these settlers were women. The governor was John White. Roanoke was occupied once more, and there, shortly afterwards, was born Virginia Dare, the first white child of English parents in North America. Before a year had gone by, the governor had to go to England for aid.

But Raleigh and all England had little time to think of the colonies in America. The Spanish Armada was coming, and every English ship and every English sailor were needed to fight the Spaniards. Two years went by before Governor White reached America with supplies. When he did reach there not a settler was left to tell the tale.

The only trace of the lost colony was the word "Croatoan" cut in large letters on a post. Croatoan was the name of an island near by. White returned home, but Raleigh sent out an old seaman, Samuel Mace, to search for the lost colony. It was all in vain. Many years later news reached England that a tribe of Indians had a band of white slaves, but the mystery of the lost colony never was cleared up.

Raleigh had now spent his great fortune. But he did not lose heart, for he said that he should live to see



POTATO PLANT AND TUBERS

Virginia a nation. He was right. Before he died a great colony had been planted in Virginia, a ship loaded with some products of Virginia had sailed into London port, and an Indian "princess" had married a Virginian and had been received with honor by the king and queen of England.

28. The death of Sir Walter Raleigh. But the great

Queen Elizabeth was dead, and an unfriendly king, James I, was on the throne. He threw Raleigh into prison, and kept him there for twelve years. While in prison Raliegh wrote his well-known History of the

world. The Spaniards urged James to put him to death. He had been a lifelong enemy of Spain and they knew they were not safe as long as he lived.

At last Spanish influence was too strong, and Sir Walter Raleigh faced death on the scaffold as bravely as he had 'faced the Spaniards in battle.

Thus died a noble man who gave both his great fortune and his life for the purpose of planting an English colony in America.



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA AND
MARYLAND

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. John Cabot, trying for a short route to India, discovered what is supposed to be Labrador, or Cape Breton. 2. On a second voyage, he coasted along eastern North America as far south as the Carolinas. 3. Later, England claimed all North America.

4. Francis Drake sailed to the Pacific in the "Pelican" and then turned northward after the Spanish gold ships. 5. He wintered in California, and then started across the Pacific—the first Englishman to cross. 6. Drake reached England, and was received with great joy. 7. Once more Drake went to

fight the Spaniards, until the great Armada attacked England.

8. Walter Raleigh, a student, a soldier, and a seaman, won the favor of the Queen. 9. He hated the Spaniards, and planted settlements in what is now North Carolina. 10. Raleigh's prophecy.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of John Cabot before he went to England. 2. What did Cabot want to find and what did he find? 3. How was Cabot treated by King Henry VII, according to a "citizen of Venice," after he returned? 4. Why

did England claim a large part of North America?

5. Prove that Spanish and English sailors did not like each other. 6. Who was Francis Drake? 7. What were Drake's plans? 8. Tell the story of Drake's voyage from Valparaiso to Oregon. 9. Tell the story of the voyage across the Pacific and how he was received at home. 10. What did Drake do when he missed the "Gold Fleet"? 11. What did Drake mean when he said he had "singed the King of Spain's beard"? 12. Tell what became of the Spanish Armada, and what effects its failure produced.

13. What other brave man went to America before the Armada was destroyed? 14. Give the early experiences of Raleigh before he was thirty. 15. Make a mental picture of the episode of the cloak. 16. Explain how kind the Indians were. 17. Who was the first white child of English parents born in America? 18. How did the Armada affect America? 19. Read in other books about Raleigh's death. 20. Compare the English and the Spanish treatment of the

Indians.

Suggested Readings. Cabot: Hart, Colonial Children, 7-8; Griffis, Romance of Discovery, 105-111.

Drake: Hart, Source Book of American History, 9-11; Hale, Stories of Discovery, 86-106; Frothingham, Sea Fighters,

3-44.

RALEIGH: Hart, Colonial Children, 165–170; Pratt, Early Colonies, 33–40; Wright, Children's Stories in American History, 254–258; Higginson, American Explorers, 177–200; Bolton, Famous Voyagers, 154–234.

THE MAN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKES REGION, AND FOUNDED QUEBEC

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, THE FATHER OF NEW FRANCE

29. The French in North America. France was the slowest of the great nations in the race for North America. Not until 1534 did Jacques Cartier, a French sea captain searching for a shorter route to India, sail into the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. He reached an Indian village where Montreal now stands and took possession of the country for his king.

One year after Jamestown was settled, and one year before the "Half Moon" sailed up the Hudson, Samuel

de Champlain laid the foundations of Quebec (1608). Champlain was of noble birth, and had been a soldier in the French army. He had already helped found Port Royal in Nova Scotia.

Wherever he went, Champlain made fast, friends with the Algonquin Indians, who lived along the St. Lawrence. He gave them presents and bought their skins of beaver and other animals. In the

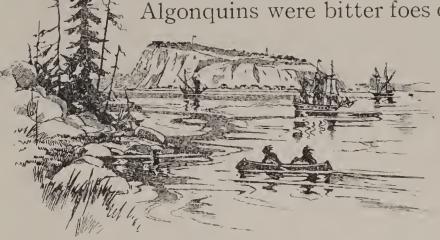
yacques Rent

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN
From the portrait painting in Independence
Hall, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

fur trade, he saw a golden stream flowing into the king's treasury. Champlain certainly made a good

beginning in winning the freindship of these Indians, but he made one great blunder which caused the Iroquois to become his bitter and lasting enemies.

30. Champlain and 'the Indians. The Algonquins were bitter foes of the Iroquiis or Five Nations.



THE SITE OF QUEBEC

Here, 1608, on a narrow belt of land at the foot of the high bluff, Champlain laid out the city of Quebec

One time the Algonquins begged Champlain and his men, clad all in steel and armed with the deadly musket, to join their

war party (1609). This he did. They made their way up the St. Lawrence River to the mouth of the Richelieu, and up that river to the falls. The Algonquin Indians then carried the canoes and the baggage around the falls.

What must have been Champlain's feelings when they glided out of the narrow river into the lake which now bears his name! A lake no white man had ever seen, and greater than any in France! On the left he, saw the ridges of the Green Mountains, on the right the pine-clad slopes of the Adirondacks, the hunting grounds of the Iroquois.

One evening, near where the ruins of Ticonderoga now stand, they saw the war canoes of their enemies. That night the hostile tribes taunted each other and boasted of their bravery. On the shores of the lake the next day they drew up in battle array. The Iroquois chiefs

wore tall plumes on their heads, and their warriors carried, besides their bows and arrows, shields of wood or hide.

All at once Algonquins the opened their ranks and Champlain, in full armor, walked forth. The Iroquois gazed in wonder on the European first soldiers they had



THE DEFEAT OF THE IROQUOIS AT LAKE CHAMPLAIN After an engraving of Champlain's published in 1613

ever seen. Champlain leveled his musket and fired. Then another report rang through the Two chiefs fell. woods, and the boldest warriors in North America broke and fled in confusion. The Algonquins, yelling like

A FRENCH FUR TRADER ON SNOWSHOES

demons, ran after them, killing and capturing as many as possible.

There great rejoicing was among the victors, and Champlain was their hero. But there must have been great sorrow and vows of revenge among the Iroquois.

The next year Champlain joined another Algonquin war party, and helped to win another victory over the Iroquois. Again, in 1615, he joined a party of more then five

hundred painted warriors. They traveled to the shore of Lake Ontario and boldly crossed to the other side in their bark canoes. They hid their boats and silently marched into the country of the Iroquois.

Some miles south of Oneida Lake they came upon a fortified Indian town. For several days Champlain and his Indians tried to break into or burn the fort, but had to give it up. These campaigns made the Iroquois hate



THE ROUTES FOLLOWED BY CHAMPLAIN

the French almost as much as they did the Algonquins. For this reason Frenchmen found it safer to go west by traveling up the Ottawa River and crossing over to Lake Huron than by paddling up the St. Lawrence and through lakes Ontario and Erie. The result was that the French discovered Lake Michigan and Lake Superior long before they ever saw Lake Erie.

Champlain remained in Canada many years, always working for the good of New France, as the country was then called. He helped on the work of the missionaries, made peace between hostile tribes of Indians, and encouraged the fur trade and the coming of new settlers. Worn

out with toil and travel, far away from kindred and native land, Champlain died at Quebec on Christmas Day, 1635.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Champlain laid the foundations of New France at Quebec. 2. He made a treaty with the Indians on the St. Lawrence.

Study Questions. 1. What part of North America did France first settle? 2. Who was Champlain? 3. What things in New France did Champlain help? 4. What was Champlain's blunder? 5. Tell the story of his first battle with the Iroquis.

Suggested Readings. Champlain: Wright, Children's Stories in American History, 269–280; McMurry, Pioneers on Land and Sea, 1–34.

WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD

HENRY HUDSON, WHOSE DISCOVERIES LED DUTCH TRADERS
TO COLONIZE NEW NETHERLAND

31. Hudson's explorations. Henry Hudson was an English sea captain in the service of a great Dutch trading company. One bright fall day Hudson sailed into the mouth of the great river which now bears his name. He hoped that he had entered an arm of the sea which would carry him to India. He turned the prow of his vessel, the "Half Moon," up stream.

Soon the beauty of the river, the rich colors of the great forests, the steep sides of the palisades, the slopes of the highlands, the strange In hans in their bark canoes, so took the attention of Hudson and his crew that for a time they forgot all about a route to India. What a flutter of excitement the "Half Moon" must have caused among the Indians! They came to welcome



HENRY HUDSON
From the painting by Count Pulaski in the Aldermanic Chamber of the City
Hall, New York

Hudson and his men. An old chief came on board and invited Hudson to visit the little village of wigwams beside the broad river. There these Dutchmen saw beautiful meadows, fields of corn, and gardens of pumpkins, grapes, and plums.

The chief showed Hudson his house of bark, and spread a feast of roasted pigeons and other Indian food before him. They even broke their bows and arrows

and then threw them into the fire to prove that they meant no harm to the white man.

The next year Hudson sailed in an English vessel in search of the long-wished-for passage. On he went, far to the northward, past Iceland and Greenland, into the great bay



NDIANS WELCOMING THE "HALF MOON, "HUDSON'S SHIP

which bears his name. In this desolate region surrounded by fields of ice and snow, Hudson and his men spent a

fearful winter. In the spring, his angry sailors threw him and a few faithful friends into a boat and set them adrift. Nothing more was ever heard of them.

32. Dutch traders and the Indians. Just as soon as the news of Hudson's first voyage reached Holland, the Dutch merchants claimed all the region explored and hastened to trade with the Indians. In 1614 a trading post was established on Manhattan Island which was to

grow into the world's greatest city, New York.

The Dutchmen treated the Indians kindly and early made a great treaty with the Iroquois, or Five Nations. The Indians liked the Dutch, who often visited them in



THE TREATY BETWEEN THE DUTCH AND THE INDIANS AT FORT ORANGE

their wigwams and sat around their camp fires. The fur trade grew rapidly. The Indians hunted and trapped as never before. They paddled their canoes up the Hudson, and crossed over to Lakes George and Champlain. They went up the Mohawk far beyond where Schenectady now is, and plunged deeper into the dark, unbroken forests, and even climbed the mountains in search of fur-coated animals. Among the favorite fur-bearing animals the beaver was first. Besides, the otter, mink, and weasel were hunted.

When the fur pack was made up the dusky hunters

from every direction made their way to the nearest trading post. There they traded their furs for guns,



THE HOME OF A PATROON The old Van Rensselaer House at Greenbush, New York rich cargoes of furs.

powder, and ball, and for whatever else the white trader had that pleased Indian fancy. Great Dutch ships came every year to carry to Amsterdam and other Dutch cities

33. The settlement of New Netherland. Already a great company of Amsterdam merchants were sending settlers to the new colony. It now was called New Netherland. Peter Minuit, the first governor, bought the island of Manhattan from the Indians for twenty-four dollars' worth of glass beads and other trinkets. On it he

built a town of log cabins and named it New Amsterdam.

But settlers did not come rapidly enough, so the company offered its members large tracts of land if they would bring colonists. The big land owners were called "patroons."



THE SALE OF MANHATTAN TO THE DUTCH Peter Minuit, who made the trade with the Indians, is known as the founder of New York City

Each patroon was to govern the people on his own land.

The greatest of the patroons was Van Rensselaer, whose plantation in the region of Fort Orange included



one thousand square miles. The farmers and servants on these plantations looked upon the patroon as being much above them in authority and social position.

Every year the farmers and their families came with their wagons filled with what they had raised to pay the patroon for the use of the land. He set them a great feast, and there was merrymaking all day long.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. I. Henry Hudson, searching for a shorter route to India, discovered the river which now bears his name. 2. Dutch traders built trading posts, made a treaty with the Indians, purchased Manhattan Island and built the town of New Amsterdam.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of Henry Hudson and the "Half Moon." 2. What was the fate of Hudson? 3. When was a trading post planted on Manhattan? 4. Make a mental picture of the treaty with the Indians. 5. How does the Dutch treatment of the Indians compare with the Spanish? 6. What three things did Peter Minuit do? 7. Who were the patroons?

Suggested Readings. Hudson: Williams, Stories from Early New York History, 1-4, 32-36; Wright, Children's Stories in American History, 292-299; Griffis, Romance of Discovery, 233-245.

FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA

JOHN SMITH, THE SAVIOR OF VIRGINIA, AND POCAHONTAS, ITS GOOD ANGEL

34. The first permanent English settlement. Raleigh had made it impossible for Englishmen to forget America. They sent out ships every year to trade with the Indians. In 1606 a great company was formed of London merchants and other rich men to plant a colony in Virginia.

King James gave them a charter, ministers preached sermons about Virginia, and poets sang her praises.



THE SITE OF JAMESTOWN After a drawing made early in the nineteenth century by an English traveler, Catherine C. Hopley

with a colony of more thanone hundred settlers. They

sailed

went by way of the West Indies, and the Spaniards, although watching, did not dare attack them.

In the spring, when Virginia was in her gayest dress, the ships sailed up Chesapeake Bay into the James River, and landed on a peninsula. Here they began to plant Jamestown, named in honor of their king. This was the first permanent English settlement in the New World.

They first built a fort to protect them from any attacks of Indians and Spaniards. But most of the settlers wanted to get rich quick, go back to England, and spend

the rest of their days in ease. Therefore, instead of building comfortable houses and raising something to

eat, they spent their time in searching for gold.

The result was that most of them fell sick and food grew scarce. Within a few months more than half the settlers were dead, and the others were discouraged and homesick. Would this colony fail too, as Raleigh's colony had?

35. John Smith and the Indians. There was one man in the colony, however, who From an engraving made by Simon von Pass, in 1614, on the margin of Smith's could make Jamestown a success. map of "New England" in "A Description of New England." This shows him at the age of thirty-seven



Smith. But he was no common man. He had already had many wonderful adventures in other countries.

The king had made Smith an officer of the new colony, but the other officers would not permit him to take part in governing Virginia. John Smith was not a man to sulk and idle his time away. He resolved to do something useful, by visiting the Indians, and gathering food for the colony.

While on an expedition up one of the rivers, Smith's party was attacked by two hundred Indians. He immediately showed the red men his ivory pocket compass. They saw the little needle tremble on its pivot, but could not touch it. He wrote a letter to Jamestown. An Indian returned with the articles asked for in the letter. This was still more mysterious than the compass.

The Indians marched him from one village to another to show off their prisoner. This gave Smith a chance to



SMITH SHOWING HIS POCKET COMPASS TO THE INDIANS

learn a great deal about the Indians. Some of them lived in houses made of bark and branches of trees; others had rude huts to shelter them. Now and then a wigwam was seen large enough to hold several families.

The Indian warriors painted their

bodies to make themselves look fierce. They carried bows and arrows and clubs as weapons, for they had no guns at that time. The men did the hunting and fighting, but in other things they were lazy. The Indian women not only cared for the children and did the cooking, but also gathered wood, tilled the soil, and built the wigwams. The Indian wife was the warrior's drudge.

36. Pocahontas saves his life. Smith saw a more wonderful sight still, when he was led to the village where lived Powhatan. Powhatan, tall and thin, was wrapped in a robe of raccoon skins. He sat upon a bench before the wigwam fire. His wives sat at his side. Along the walls stood a row of women with faces and shoulders painted bright red, and with chains of white shells about their necks. In front of the women stood Powhatan's

fierce warriors. This council of Indians was to decide the fate of Smith.

Two big stones were rolled in front of Powhatan, and a number of powerful warriors sprang upon Smith, dragged him to the stones, and forced his head upon one of them. As the warriors stood, clubs in hand, ready to slay Smith, Pocahontas, the beautiful twelve-year-old daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward, threw her arms around the prisoner, and begged for his life. Pocahontas had her way. Powhatan adopted Smith as a son and set him to making toys for the little maid.

After a time Smith returned to Jamestown only to find the settlers facing starvation, and the officers planning to escape to England in the colony's only vessels. He promptly arrested the leaders and restored order. In a few days, the hungry settlers saw a band of Indians, led by Pocahontas, enter the fort. They were loaded down with baskets of corn.

The fear of starvation was now gone,



After the engraved portrait by Simon van Pass, known as the Bootan Hall portrait and now at Scalthorpe Hall, Norfolk

because every few days the little maiden came with food for the settlers. Ever afterward they called her "the dear blessed Pocahontas." She was the good angel of the Virginia colony.

> When winter came on, Smith resolved to secure another supply of corn. He knew that Powhatan's women had raised plenty of



AN INDIAN WARRIOR

corn, and immediately sailed up the river to the old chief's village. But Powhatan had noticed the increase of settlers and the building of more houses. He feared that his people might be driven from their hunting grounds, so he bluntly told Smith he could have no corn unless he would give a good English sword for each basketful. Smith promptly refused, and compelled the Indians to carry the corn on board his boat. That very night, at the risk of

her life, Pocahontas stole through the woods to tell Smith of her father's plot to kill his men. They kept close watch all night, and next morning sailed safely away.

37. Smith makes the men work. When spring came Smith resolved that the settlers must go to work. He called them together and made a speech declaring that "he that will not work shall not eat. You shall not only gather for yourself, but for those that are sick. They shall not starve." The people in the colony not only planted more grain, but repaired the fort and built more and better houses. Thus they grew happier and more contented and comfortable in their home in the Virginia woods.

Unfortunately for the colony, Smith was wounded so badly by an explosion of gunpowder that he had to return to England for medical treatment. The settlers again fell into idleness after he left, and many of them died. Still the colony had gained such a foothold that it was strong enough to live.

Some years later, Smith sailed to America again, explored the coast from Penobscot Bay to Cape Cod, drew a map of it, and named the region New England This was his last visit to America.

38. Pocahontas. After John Smith left, Pocahontas did not visit the English any more. One day she was seized by an Englishman, put on board a vessel, and carried weeping to Jamestown.

Before long an English settler, John Rolfe, fell in love with her and she with him. What should they do? Did not this beautiful maiden of eighteen years have a strange

religion? But she was anxious to learn about the white man's religion, so the minister at Jamestown baptized her and gave her the Christian name of Rebecca.

The wedding took place in the little wooden

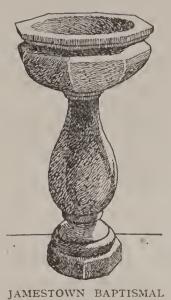


THE MARRIAGE OF ROLFE AND POCAHONTAS

After the painting by Henry Brueckner

church. No doubt it was made bright with the lovely wild flowers of Virginia and all the settlers crowded to

see the strange event. Powhatan gave his consent, but would not come to the wedding himself.



FONT
From this font, now in
Bruton Parish Church,
Virginia, it is said Pocahontas was baptized

It was a happy day for Jamestown, for all the people, white and red, loved Pocahontas. The marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe was taken to mean the uniting of the Indians and settlers by ties of peace and friendship. For several years white men and red men lived as good neighbors. Rolfe took Pocahontas to England, where she was received "as the daughter of a king." The fine people, lords and ladies, called on her; and the king and queen received the Indian maiden at court as if she were a princess of

the royal blood.

How different the rich clothes, the carriages, and the high feasting from her simple life in the Virginia woods! Here, too, she met her old friend, John Smith. He called her "Lady Rebecca," as did everybody. But the memories of other days and other scenes arose in her mind. She covered her face with her hands for a moment, and then said he must call her "child," and that she would call him "father." Smith must have thought of the days when she brought corn to Jamestown to feed his starving people.

When about to sail for her native land, Pocahontas died (1617). So ended the life of one who had indeed been a good and true friend of the people of Virginia. Her name, Pocahontas, meant "bright stream between two hills."

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. London merchants carried out Raleigh's idea by planting a colony in Virginia. 2. John Smith saved the colony by putting the settlers to work, by trading with the Indians, and by winning the friendship of Pocahontas.

Study Questions. 1. How long did it take Captain Newport to reach Virginia? 2. How long does it take a ship to cross the Atlantic now? 3. Why were the settlers afraid of the Indians and Spaniards? 4. Why did the Virginia settlers hunt for gold instead of raising something to eat? 5. What did Smith learn about the Indians? 6. Show how Pocahontas was a friend of the colony.

Suggested Readings. SMITH: McMurry, Pioneers on Land and Sea, 68–102; Hart, Source Book, 33–37; Higginson, American Explorers, 231–246.

SOME OLD-ENGLAND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND

MILES STANDISH, THE PILGRIM SOLDIER, AND THE STORY OF "PLYMOUTH ROCK"

39. The Pilgrims. Persecuted for their religion in England, the Puritans first went to Holland, where they wandered from place to place before settling at Leiden. But they saw that they could not keep their own language and customs among the Dutch, so they decided to go to America and found a colony of their own. Miles Standish, William Brewster, and William Bradford were to lead the little band that had been chosen to go on the long journey. The parting was sad. Eyes were wet, and voices were choked with sorrow as the last words were spoken before the Pilgrims went on board the "Speedwell." Even the Dutch bystanders shed tears.

The "Speedwell" carried them across to England, where they found the "Mayflower." Here, too, they found John

Alden, a handsome young fellow, who, with some other Englishmen, had decided to go to America. This is the same John Alden who afterwards won Priscilla from Miles Standish.

In August, 1620, the two ships spread their sails for America. Twice they were forced to return—once after they had sailed three hundred miles—because the "Speedwell" was leaking and her captain declared she would sink before reaching America.

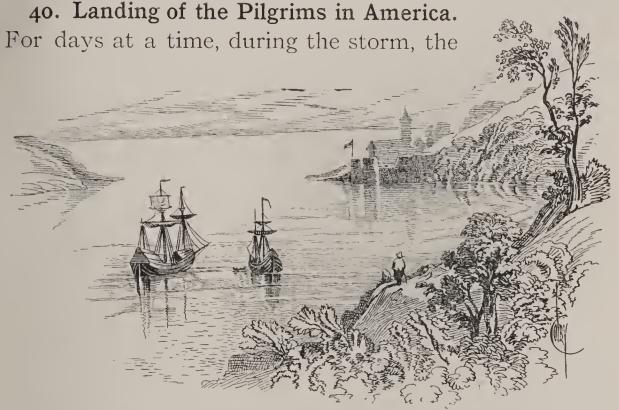
Finally the "Mayflower," with one hundred and two Pilgrims on board, started alone. Not many days passed before great storms overtook her. The waves rolled



her. For many days the passengers had to spend nearly all the time below deck, not knowing what moment would

After the original painting by Charles West Cope

be their last. Strained by the storm, the "Mayflower" began to leak, but the brave Pilgrims would not turn back.



THE "MAYFLOWER" AND THE "SPEEDWELL" IN DARTMOUTH HARBOR
It was to this harbor the Pilgrims returned to repair the leak in the "Speedwell"

ship could not use her sails and was driven far out of her course, to the northward. The Pilgrims had intended to land near the mouth of the Hudson, but on November 20, 1620, the little band of exiles found themselves looking with glad hearts upon the sandy but heavily wooded shores of Cape Cod. How they poured out their hearts in gratitude that they had crossed the stormy sea in safety! The men all gathered in the little cabin of the "Mayflower" to sign the Compact or Agreement in regard to the government of the colony. Then they elected John Carver their first governor.

Everybody was now anxious to get on shore. Captain Miles Standish, with his little army, waded ashore through the ice-cold water and disappeared in the dark forest

in search of a good place to plant the colony. For three days they tramped through forests, up and down hills,



READING THE COMPACT ON BOARD THE "MAYFLOWER"

andalongthesandy coast, but found · no suitable place. They found springs, however, and ponds of fresh water, and some Indian mounds containing stores of corn. What should they do, take the corn, or leave it and run the risk of starvation? They decided to take only enough to

plant in the spring. They afterwards paid the owners double for what they had taken.

Everywhere they saw flocks of wild fowl, good for food, and they also saw tracks of wild deer. While Bradford was examining an Indian snare set for game, he found himself suddenly swinging by one leg in the air. They had a hearty laugh and learned a new lesson in the art of catching game.

Twice again Standish led his little company to search out a place. On the third trip, as they were at breakfast, their ears were suddenly filled with the most fearful shouts. A shower of arrows fell near them. It was an Indian attack. Captain Standish and his men seized their guns and fired as fast as they could. Happily, the

Indians, frightened at the roar of muskets, ran away before any one was killed on either side.

On this trip the Pilgrims found the harbor of Plymouth, which John Smith had explored and named several years before. Its shore was now to become their home. They immediately hastened back to the ship to tell the good news, and in a few days the "Mayflower" carried the Pilgrims into Plymouth Harbor. The little party landed on December 21, 1620, and that day is still celebrated as "Forefather's Day." The story is that when they landed they stepped on a large stone. This stone is called "Plymouth Rock," and you may see it still when you visit Plymouth.

41. Their home in the forest. Although it was winter, the men immediately began to chop down trees and build a great log storehouse which could be used for a hospital and for worship.

Then they began building their own homes. They cut down the trees, sawed off the logs, hewed them roughly, and then dragged them by hand to the place where the house was to stand. When the logs were ready, the men lifted them up by hand or when the walls grew too high for lifting, they slid them up "skids."

The roof was made of boards which had been split from logs of wood. These were held in



MILES STANDISH
From a portrait now in possession of Mrs. A.M. Harrison, Plymouth

place by smaller logs. The wind and rain were kept out by "chinking" or daubing the cracks between the logs with mortar. The windows were few and small, for they had no glass and used oiled skins instead.

This first winter in America was the saddest the Pilgrims had ever seen. Their storehouse was turned into a hospital. They had been used to the gentler winters of England and Holland. Before the warm days of spring came, one half of the little band had perished, among them Governor Carver. But the Pilgrims had brave hearts, and not a man or woman among those left went back to England when the "Mayflower" sailed.

42. Friendship with the Indians. Brave Miles Standish kept his little army—what was left of it—ready for any danger. He built a fort on a hill, and mounted the cannon brought over in the "Mayflower."

But the Indians were not so bad after all, for had it not been for them, the Pilgrims would have had a much harder time. One day while the leaders were talking



POUNDING CORN TO MAKE MEAL

over military affairs, they saw a fine-looking Indian coming toward them, and calling in the English language, "Welcome! Welcome!" This was a double surprise. The Indian was Samoset, who had already saved the lives of two white men taken by the Indians.

In a few days Samoset brought other Indians,

dressed in deer and panther skins. They made the Pilgrims think of gypsies seen in Holland. Their long black hair was braided and ornamented with feathers and foxtails. They sang and danced for the Pilgrims.

When Samoset came again, he brought Squanto, an Indian who had been captured and carried to London, and who could speak English. They gave the news that the great Indian chief, Massasoit, was coming to visit his strange neighbors.



INDIANS TEACHING THE PILGRIMS HOW TO

A messenger was sent to welcome him and to give him presents. Massasoit and twenty other Indians without bows and arrows were met by Captain Standish and escorted into the presence of the governor. There both parties agreed not to harm each other, and to be friends forever. As long as Massasoit lived this pledge was kept.

Spuanto taught the Pilgrims many new things. He showed them how to raise corn and how to pound the corn to make meal. He also taught them how to catch eels.

The first summer was now over and the Pilgrims' first harvest had been gathered. Their houses had been repaired, and the health of the settlers was good. Fish and wild game were plentiful. They decided that the time for rejoicing and thanksgiving had also come, and invited Massasoit and his warriors to join them in the celebration.

For three days the games, military movements, feastings, and rejoicing went on, and at the end the Pilgrims

and Indians were better friends than before. This was the beginning of our custom of having a day of thanksgiving each year.

For a whole year the Pilgrims had not heard a word from the great world across the sea. How eager they must have been for just one

word from their old homes! At last one day the Indians sent runners to tell them that a ship was in sight. The cannon on the hilltop boomed. Captain Standish and his men ran for their guns and stood ready to

GOVERNOR CARVER'S LAMP

defend the colony against Spaniards or French. But it was a ship with news and friends from Leiden and England.

After a few weeks this ship returned to England loaded with furs, clapboards, and sassafras to pay those English merchants who had furnished the Pilgrims the "Mayflower" to bring them to America.

Thus the Pilgrims went on year by year, living in peace when they could, but fighting when they must. Every year or so new settlers came from their old homes across the sea, and the struggling colony grew slowly, but steadily.

After a few years the new king of England was so hard upon the Puritans in England that thousands of them followed the example of the Pilgrims and came to America, and planted many other colonies in New England.



WEDDING SLIPPER WORN BY A "MAYFLOWER" BRIDE

JOHN WINTHROP, THE FOUNDER OF BOSTON, AND FIRST GOVERNOR OF THE COLONY OF MASSACHUSETTS

43. The Puritans. While the Pilgrims were living in their home on the lonely American shore, the Puritans in

England were being cruelly persecuted by Charles I. So great became their sufferings and dangers that the Puritan leaders decided to go to America, where they could worship as they pleased. Charles I, fortunately, gave them a good charter. But even before this, some of the Puritans had already planted a colony at Salem.

44. John Winthrop. The Puritan leaders elected John Winthrop governor of the new colony. In the spring of 1630, nearly ten years after the



JOHN WINTHROP
From a portrait painted by John
Singleton Copley; reproduced by
permission of the trustees
of Harvard University

"Mayflower" sailed, seven hundred Puritans, in eleven ships, bade good-by to their beautiful English homes, crossed-the ocean, and settled where Boston now stands.

John Winthrop, the leader and governor of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, the name given to the Salem and Boston settlements, was then about forty years old, and had been in college at Cambridge, in England. He was a man of high social position and noble qualities.

The Puritans who came with him were people of property. When they came to America, they gave up lives of comfort for lives of hardship. Only brave men and

women act in this way. But no one among them gave up more or was willing to suffer more than their leader.



THE JEW ENGLAND SETTLEMENTS

The people elected him governor almost every year until his death in 1649.
While Winthrop was ruling the col-

was ruling the colony, many settlers came and settled other towns around Boston. But they did not always agree in religion

and government, and other colonies were founded on the Atlantic seaboard where the settlers had more religious freedom than the Puritans allowed.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The Puritans first migrated to Holland to gain religious freedom. 2. Later they went to America, planted the colony of Plymouth, made peace with the Indians, and worshiped in their own way. 3. Winthrop founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony and was its governor.

Study Questions. 1. Why did the Pilgrims decide to leave England? 2. What new danger threatened them in Holland? 3. Tell the story of Miles Standish. 4. Why do Americans love the Pilgrims? 5. Tell about John Winthrop and the Puritans.

Suggested Readings. PILGRIMS: Hart, Colonial Children, 136-140, 177-182; Glascock, Stories of Columbia, 69-81; Pratt, Early Colonies, 113-123; Drake, Making of New England, 67-87.

Puritans (John Winthrop): Hart, Colonial Children, 136-140; Drake, Making of New England, 149-186; Hart, Source Book, 45-48; Higginson, American Explorers, 341-361.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE

PETER STUYVESANT, THE GREAT DUTCH GOVERNOR

45. Stuyvesant becomes governor. This sturdy son of Holland was born at a time when his country was

fighting hard against Spain for independence. His father was a minister, who, it may be supposed. brought up young Peter after the strict manner of the Dutch.

Peter early began to study Latin. He was vain of his knowledge, and later took pride in showing off his Latin to the settlers of New Amsterdam.

When he left school young Peter joined the army, where he



THE DUTCH SETTLEMENTS

found plenty of hard work. He performed the duties of a soldier quicker and better than some of his

comrades, and in a few years was given command over a growing Dutch colony in the West Indies.



PETER STUYVESANT

From a seventeenth-century portrait at present in the collection of the New York

Historical Society

In-a fierce assault on a Portuguese fort Stuyvesant lost a leg and had to return to Holland. As soon as he was well the Dutch India Company sent him to New Netherland to save that colony from the Indians.

The arrival of Stuyve-sant, with his little army and fleet of four vessels, brought great joy to the discouraged settlers and fur traders. He said to the people: "I shall reign over you as a father over his

children." But Stuyvesant ruled the colony far more like a king than a father. He was not only commander in chief of the army, but was also lawmaker, judge, and governor, all in one.

46. Rules with a firm hand. The new laws made by Stuyvesant showed that he intended to keep order in New Netherland. He forbade Sabbath-breaking, drunkenness, the sale of drink to the Indians, and to any one else after the nine o'clock bell had rung. He ordered the owners of all vacant lots in New Amsterdam to improve them, and tried to fix the location of all new buildings. He taxed traders, whether they shipped goods to Europe or brought goods into New Netherland.

Stuyvesant did, indeed, restore order to the colony,

but he stirred up the people until they demanded a voice in the government. He finally agreed that they might select nine of their wisest men to advise with him. They were called the Council. He had no idea of following anybody's advice unless it agreed with his own notions, but the people had gained something.

At the same time Stuyvesant was just as busy with his neighbors' affairs. He quarreled with the English in New England, as well as with the patroons in his own colony.

Stuyvesant claimed all the region now included in New Jersey, a large part of that in the states of New York, Delaware, and Pennsylvania, and also a part of the territory of New England.

The colony grew in numbers. New towns sprang up along the Hudson and on Long Island. But the increase in the number of towns only made the call for a government by the people still louder.

47. Surrenders to English. For several years the dispute between the people and the governor went on until, one day in 1664, news came that a fleet of English war vessels was in sight. Although England and Holland



A VIEW OF THE CITY AND HARBOR OF NEW AMSTERDAM (NEW YORK), 1656

were at peace, the English king had given New Netherland to his brother, the duke of York, and the English



A DUTCH SOLDIER

fleet had come to take it for the duke.

Governor Stuyvesant was resolved to defend the colony to the last. But he was surprised to find that his people were not willing to fight for a governor who had given them so

little share in governing themselves.

The commander of the fleet sent a letter to Stuyvesant offering very favorable terms of surrender. The Council wanted the governor to surrender, but he grew angry, tore the letter to pieces, and declared he would never

give up. The Council put the pieces of the letter together and read it to the people. The minister of his own church begged the governor not to fight, and leading citizens and mothers with



A DUTCH COTTAGE AND STREET SCENE IN NEW YORK, 1679

their children pleaded with Stuyvesant to surrender to the English. Now what could the brave old Dutchman do?

He could not fight a whole fleet alone. He turned sadly away, saying, "I would rather go to my grave than to surrender the city."

48. New Netherland becomes New York. The English took possession, and the colony of New Netherland became the colony of New York. At the same time New Amsterdam became the town of New York and Fort Orange became Albany. English governors came to rule instead of Dutch governors. A few years later a Dutch fleet recaptured the colony; but, by a treaty at the close of the war, Holland returned it to England. When William and Mary came to the throne of England (1689) they gave New York a Representative Assembly.

Although Dutch rule was gone forever, the Dutch people and Dutch ideas and customs remained. Peter Stuyvesant himself had become so attached to the colony that he came back from Holland and spent his remaining years on his great farm, or bowery, as the Dutch called it.

WILLIAM PENN, THE QUAKER, WHO FOUNDED THE "CITY OF BROTHERLY LOVE"

49. William Penn. One day Thomas Loe, a Quaker preacher, ventured into the old university town of Oxford. He declared that all men were equal, and he refused to recognize rank or title. He taught men to live and worship in a very simple way.

A few students believed his teachings and resolved to become Quakers. Among them was William Penn, the son of a great naval officer, Admiral Penn. What a buzzing there was in that old college town when the news spread that William Penn, the fine scholar, the skilled oarsman, and all-round athlete, had become a Quaker!

Some of his comrades would not believe it. But when they saw him put off the cap and gown of his college, which some of the greatest men in English history had worn with pride, and put on the plain garb of the Quakers, they gave up.

The stern old admiral disapproved of what his son had done. But William resolutely refused to give up his Quaker views, and the admiral decided to try the plan of sending him to Paris, where life was as un-Quaker-like as it could be.

William Penn himself looked little like a Quaker. He



At the age of 22, from a painting in the rooms of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, presented by his grandson, Granville Penn of Stoke Poges

was then eighteen years old, fine looking, with large eyes and long, dark, curly hair reaching to his shoulders.

Young Penn, however, did not entirely waste his time in the gay life of Paris. He attended school and traveled in Italy. At the end of two years he came back.

It was not long before the admiral again saw Quaker signs in his son and

hastened him off to Ireland to cure him entirely. But who should be preaching in Ireland but Thomas Loe! William

went to hear his old preacher, and this time became a Quaker forever. No suffering was great enough to cause



THE MEETING BETWEEN WILLIAM PENN AND KING CHARLES

him ever again to waver, although fines were heaped on him and at four different times he was thrown into foul jails.

Penn's family now felt the disgrace very keenly, but his father promised to forgive him if he would take off his hat to the king, to the king's brother, and to his father. One day, the story goes, King Charles, the merry monarch, met William Penn and others. All hats were promptly removed except the king's and Penn's. Presently the king, too, removed his hat. Whereupon, Penn said: "Friend Charles, why dost thou remove thy hat?" The king replied: "Because, wherever I am, it is customary for but one to remain covered."

When William Penn was twenty-six years old, his father died. William then came into possession of a fortune. Once more he stood "where the roads parted."

He could now be a great man and play the part of a fine English gentleman who would always be welcome at



Set above their mill by Penn and two partners, in 1699, to show which way the wind might blow

court, or he could remain a Quaker. He resolved to stand by his Quaker comrades and devote his fortune and his life to giving them relief.

50. The founding of Pennsylvania. King Charles II owed Penn's father about eighty thousand dollars. William Penn asked him to pay it in American land. Charles was only too glad to grant this request of the son of his old sea captain. The land he gave to Penn is the present great

state of Pennsylvania. Penn wanted the colony called "Sylvania," meaning "woodland," but the king declared it should be called Pennsylvania in memory of Admiral Penn.

By means of letters and pamphlets Penn sent word to

the Quakers throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland. He told them of Quaker homes across the sea, where jails would not trouble them.

Penn even visited Europe and told the persecuted and oppressed about the new colony where every sort of Christian was to find a hearty welcome, and where no one was to be punished for religion's sake.



A QUAKER

Hundreds of settlers hastened to the new colony. When Penn reached Newcastle on the Delaware in the fall of the year 1682 he met a hearty welcome from scores of happy people who were already enjoying their long-wished-for religious freedom.



WILLIAM PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS

After the painting by Benjamin West, which hangs in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

One of Penn's first acts was to call a meeting of the colonists to talk over their government. This pleased the people greatly, for he gave them land for their houses and farms, also the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws.

Penn next turned his attention to founding the great Quaker city to which he gave the name "Philadelphia," which means brotherly love and expresses Penn's feeling toward other men. Philadelphia grew faster than the other colonial towns, and soon led them all.

William Penn won the love and the respect of the Indians of Pennsylvania. He visited them in their own towns and ate with them. He even took part in their

athletic games and outran them all. He believed that they should be paid for their lands. Accordingly, he made rich gifts and entered into solemn treaties with the chiefs.

At a treaty under a great elm tree on the banks of the Delaware, Penn said to the Indians: "We are the same as if one man's body were divided into two parts: We are all one flesh and one blood." In return the Indians said: "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." If the Indians admired a white man they said: "He is like William Penn."

The news of the establishment of free government and free religious worship brought crowds of settlers from Germany. Hundreds of German families in the valleys of the Rhine and the Neckar escaped to "Penn's Woods," and there their children's children are to be found today under the name of the "Pennsylvania Dutch." Without boasting, William Penn could say that no other one man, at his own expense, had planted so great a colony in the wilds of America as he had. Few nobler men ever lived than William Penn. He died July 30, 1718.

JAMES OGLETHORPE, THE FOUNDER OF GEORGIA AS A HOME FOR ENGLISH DEBTORS, AS A PLACE FOR PERSECUTED PROTESTANTS, AND AS A BARRIER AGAINST THE SPANIARDS

51. A friend of the unfortunate. James Oglethorpe was an Englishman. At an early age he went to Oxford to study, but he was drawn away from college by the clash of arms. Oglethorpe was a soldier for many years. Later he became a member of Parliament.

A friend of Oglethorpe died in a debtors' prison.

This aroused his sympathies for the poor. He examined English jails, and found them so dirty and dark and

damp that strongbodied men, to say nothing of women and children, soon sickened and died in them. Besides, he found that the jailers were often bad men, who whipped the prisoners on their bare backs and stole their food.

The prison was a poor place for a man in debt, anyway. How could a man pay his debts while he was shut up in prison?



JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE
From an original portrait painted by Simon Francois
Ravenet, from a mezzotint by Burford in the
print room at the British Museum

Oglethorpe, like many other noble men before him, thought of America as a place of refuge for the unfortunate. King George II gave him a charter for the land between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers, and made his heart glad by declaring that all Protestants should be tolerated there.

When the debtors heard the news that Oglethorpe was to plant a colony for them there was great excitement. But he carefully selected his settlers, so that no lazy man might be found among them. Arms and tools for work on the farms were given to the settlers.

When the time came, thirty families were ready to sail. Oglethorpe carried them direct to Charleston, South Carolina. When they landed, in 1733, the people of Charleston were only too glad to have a colony south of them as a "buffer" against the Spaniards who occupied Florida, and who had already attacked South Carolina.

Therefore, to give the new colony a good start, the people of Charleston presented the settlers with one hundred head of cattle, a drove of hogs, and fifteen or twenty barrels of rice. Rejoicing in their new supplies, the colony sailed to the Savannah River, and not far from its mouth, on a beautiful bluff, Oglethorpe marked out the streets of the new city. The settlers went to work with a will, cutting down trees and making them into cabins. They soon had homes that were comfortable, although different from what they had known in England.

Soon other colonists came to Savannah. Among these was a company of Italians who hadcome to raise the



OGLETHORPE SURVEYING THE SITE OF SAVANNAH

silkworm and to manufacture silk.

In the next year after Oglethorpe planted the settlement a band of sturdy German Protestants arrived. These settlers built their homes above Savannah, and

called the colony "Ebenezer," which means "the Lord hath helped us." Between these two settlements a band of pious

Moravian immigrants founded a colony. Then followed the settlement of Augusta, far up the Savannah River and

well out among the Indians, which served as a sort of outpost.

To these was added a colony on the Altamaha River. This colony was settled by a company of Highlanders from Scotland.

In the meantime, Oglethorpe had gone to England, but he soon returned with more than two hundred English immigrants, who came to Georgia to better their condition. With these



OGLETHORPE'S STRONGHOLD

Standing on a bold rocky bluff overlooking a beautiful bay, it guarded the
entrance to Frederica

immigrants came John and Charles Wesley, deeply religious men who were soon to awake all England with a revival of religion.

While in England, Oglethorpe was made a colonel. He saw that trouble with Spain must soon come. From the beginning of the settlement of Georgia, Oglethorpe had been careful to treat the Indians well. He had made treaties with them and had paid them for their lands. He now went to visit the Creek and the Cherokee Indians.

On an island at the mouth of the Altamaha, Oglethorpe planted a town to serve as an outpost against the Spaniards. He fortified it, and made it very strong. This town was called Frederica.

In 1742 a Spanish fleet of fifty-one vessels and five thousand men attacked Frederica. Oglethorpe beat them off, and thereafter the Spaniards left Georgia in peace. He went back to England and became a general.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Peter Stuyvesant was sent out by the Dutch West India Company as governor of New York. 2 He gave the people little power. 3. The Council surrendered the colony to the English against the will of Stuyvesant. 4. New Netherland became the colony of New York. 5. The

Dutch kept up their native customs.

6. William Penn became a Quaker while a student at Oxford. 7. He founded a colony in America on a tract of land given to him in payment of the king's debt to his father. 8. Penn gave the colonists the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws. 9. He made friends with the Indians. 10. He founded Philadelphia.

11. Oglethorpe determined to do something for the unfortunates shut up in jail for debt. 12. He obtained a charter from the king for some land in Georgia. 13. The town was built near the mouth of the Savannah River. 14. Oglethorpe

built Frederica to keep back the Spaniards.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of Peter Stuyvesant's early life. 2. What reforms did Stuyvesant make? 3. What part did the nine men play in the government? 4. Why were the people glad when the English fleet came? 5. What did

William and Mary do for the colony?

6. Why should the students at Oxford be surprised to hear that William Penn had turned Quaker? 7. Why did his father drive him from home? 8. When did Penn become a Quaker forever? 9. What was his noble resolution? 10. How did Penn come into possession of Pennsylvania? 11. Prove that he was a generous man. 12. Why did he call his town the "city of brotherly love"?

13. Tell the story of Oglethorpe. 14. Why did Charleston help Oglethorpe's colony? 15. Why did he build Frederica?

Suggested Readings. Stuyvesant: Williams, Stories from Early New York History, 21-32; Smith and Dutton, The Colonies, 189-202.

PENN: Pratt, Early Colonies, 158-165; Hart, Colonial Chil-

dren, 144-148; Dixon, William Penn, 11-273.

OGLETHORPE: Smith and Dutton, The Colonies, 78-89; Pratt, Early Colonies, 173-176; Hart, Source Book, 71-73; Cooper, James Oglethorpe.

THREE GREAT FRENCHMEN WHO CARRIED THE FLAG OF FRANCE DOWN THE MISSISSIPPI AND ALONG THE GULF COAST

ROBERT DE LA SALLE, WHO PUSHED FORWARD THE WORK OF EXPLORING THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

52. Governor at Frontenac. Two Frenchmen, Joliet and Marquette, had gone part of the way down the great Mississippi River. Now another Frenchman set out to complete their journey. La Salle belonged to a rich French family, and had left home at the age of twenty-three (1666) for the wild life in the American forests.

He first built a fort-like post just above Montreal and named it Lachine, because he supposed it was located on the route to China. In 1673 he helped build Fort

Frontenac where the Canadian city of Kingston now stands.

La Salle returned home, and the king received him with honor and made him governor of the region around Fort Frontenac. He came back and built a great stone fort. Settlers arrived and began to build their cabins around it, making a little frontier village.

Here the fur trader came each season with his pack;



Reproduced from a design based on an old engraving

here the faithful missionary said good-by before plunging into the unknown wilderness, perhaps never to return.

outh Bend

ROUTES OF THE FRENCH MISSIONARIES AND TRADERS WHO EXPLORED THE

MISSISSIPPI VALLEY



La Salle was growing rich, but he longed to make good his country's right to the Mississippi Valley with its richer soil and milder climate. Once more he returned to

France, and the king gave him permission to explore the great valley and to build forts along the way.

53. The first ship on the lakes. La Salle came back bringing with him sailors and carpenters, as well as suplies such as anchors and cables, for he intended to build a ship for use on the lakes. But best of all, he brought, Tonti his faithful Italian helper and friend. Hennepin, the missionary, carried an altar so made that he could strap it on his back and set it up for worship wherever he chose.

La Salle had resolved to build his first fort at the mouth of the Niagara River, but the Iroquois permitted him to build La Salle 81

only a large storehouse. They were greatly displeased when he set about building a ship above Niagara to sail the Great Lakes to the west, and threatened to burn it.

When the new ship, the "Griffin," was ready to sail, her builders towed her up the Niagara River and then into Lake Erie. There was great rejoicing, when, amid the firing of cannon and the singing of songs, she spread her sails, the first to whiten the waters of Lake Erie.

On they sailed, through sunshine and storm, up Lake Huron until the mission town where Marquette was buried came into view. When the "Griffin" fired her cannon, all was astir in that town of fur traders, missionaries, and Indians. La Salle's men landed with great show. They marched to the little chapel and knelt before the altar.



FRENCH FUR TRADERS BARTERING WITH THE INDIANS

La Salle then sailed through the straits and to the head of Green Bay, where some of his men, sent out



STARVED ROCK ON THE ILLINOIS RIVER

Many interesting Indian legends are connected with this rock, part of a region which may soon be made into a state park

many months before, had collected a great quantity of furs. Laden with these, the 'Griffin' sailed for the storehouse on the Niagara, but La Salle neversaw again this first ship of the lakes.

54. Exploring

the Mississippi Valley. La Salle and his friends spent months exploring the lake shores and the streams that flowed into the lakes. But La Salle's heart was set on tracing the great Mississippi River to its mouth. So he, with Tonti, returned to Fort Frontenac, collected supplies, and was soon crossing the portage between the Chicago and Illinois rivers. On the Illinois River they saw Starved Rock, a high bluff renowned in Indian history. On they went until in February their canoes floated out upon the bosom of the "Father of Waters" (1682).

Down the river they floated, passing the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Arkansas, where Joliet and Marquette had turned back. With the kindly help of new guides, they passed on until they found the Mississippi branching into three streams. La Salle divided his party, and each took a stream to the Gulf.

On shore, just above the mouth, a cross was raised and La Salle took possession of all the country he had explored "in the name of Louis the Great, king of France." The company shouted, "Long live the king!" La Salle's first great object had been accomplished.

La Salle's next step was to return to France and ask the king to plant a colony of Frenchmen at the mouth of the Mississippi River. The king agreed, and La Salle set sail for the Gulf of Mexico with a fleet of four ships and a colony of more than one hundred and fifty persons (1684). He missed the Mississippi and landed at Matagorda Bay in Texas. The colonists blamed La Salle. He tried in vain to find the Mississippi.

Suffering and discontent increased until a party of La Salle's men lay in ambush and shot him, and left his

body in the woods.

More than a year
went by before
the faithful Tonti
heard of the sad
fate of the great
leader.

The French king refused to send aid to the starving colonists in Texas, but the brave and heroic Tonti, though saddened by the death of La Salle, resolved to rescue them. His rescuing



LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI

party suffered awful hardships. They deserted Tonti on the lower Mississippi, and he was at last forced to return to Starved Rock. IBERVILLE AND BIENVILLE CARRY ON LA SALLE'S WORK AND FOUND TWO CITIES

55. A new expedition starts. There was something heroic about La Salle. His bold deeds stirred the ambition of the French. They resolved to carry out his plans. They would plant settlements along the Mississippi River. Its great valley should belong to France.

In October, 1698, a company of two hundred eager Frenchmen set sail from the home country. In command was Pierre Le Moyne, better known by his other name, Iberville. He was thirty-eight years old, bold and restless, a worthy follower of La Salle. With him was his young brother, Jean Baptiste, who is also usually called by his other name, Bienville.

56. They reach the Mississippi. After a long voyage they reached what was later known as Mobile Bay. Not far away must be the great Mississippi. So they



DE BIENVILLE

set sail in search of it. In time they found a river pouring its muddy waters far out into the blue sea. Was this the Mississippi? In their eagerness to find out they pulled their small boats against the mighty current for two hundred miles. Benioes, an Indian, met them and handed them a letter from Tonti. Fourteen years before Tonti had come down

the river searching for La Salle and had left the note for him. Now they felt they were the true followers of the great man and that this was indeed the "Father of Waters."

57. Mobile is founded. For his colony Iberville first chose a spot on the shores of Biloxi Bay. Here in 1690 they built a fort. Later Iberville made up his mind to find a better location. He selected a high bluff on the Mobile River near its mouth. Big ships could lie safe in the river, and boats could go for miles up the stream trading with the Indians. In 1702 the settlement was moved to



this hill by the river. Here Fort Louis was built. Eight years later (1710) the settlement was moved a little farther down the river. This was the beginning of the city of Mobile, the early capital of the French colony.

58. Bienville founds New Orleans. When the party first sailed up the Mississippi, young Bienville looked at the place where New Orleans now stands and said to himself: "There ought to be a town here." He did not forget the spot where the waters of Lake Pontchartrain come so near the great river. The French must build a town here if they wished to control the Mississippi Valley. British traders were already pushing westward from South Carolina and Georgia. One of their vessels had sailed some distance up the river. When Bienville became governor of the colony he determined to carry out his plan. In 1718 he founded New Orleans on the

curve of the great river. Hence it is called the "Crescent City." It in turn became the capital of the colony. Later it grew to be one of the greatest of the American cities.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. La Salle was sent to complete the exploration of the Mississippi. 2. La Salle made his way to the Gulf of Mexico.

3. Iberville and Bienville wished to plant French settlements near the mouth of the Mississippi, to hold its great valley for France. 4. Iberville founded Mobile, and Bienville, when he succeeded his brother as governor of the colony, founded New Orleans. 5. The founding of Mobile and New Orleans make clear France's plan to establish a new France in America.

Study Questions. 1. Why was La Salle not satisfied merely to get rich? 2. Describe the first voyage on the lakes. 3. Find on the map the places named. 4. How did La Salle reach the Mississippi? 5. Picture Tonti's fort on Starved Rock. 6. Tell the story of the fate of La Salle.

7. How did Iberville and Bienville set out to reach the Mississippi? 8. Why may we think of them as the successors of La Salle? 9. Tell how the chief seaport of Alabama came to be located where it is now. 10. Why is New Orleans called the "Crescent City"? 11. Why did Bienville choose this site to start a settlement? 12. How did it help New France to occupy the mouth of the Mississippi?

Suggested Readings. La Salle: Wright, Children's Stories in American History, 316-330; Pratt, Later Colonial Period, 1-28.

IBERVILLE and BIENVILLE: Hamilton, Mobile: under Five Flags.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND THE FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

THE "FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY"

59. George Washington as a boy. When Washington was born, February 22, 1732, in the old colony of Virginia, the early settlements had grown into towns, and planters had prospered. His father's house stood upon a gentle hill slope which ran down to the softly flowing Potomac.

When George was eleven years old, his father died. His older brother, Lawrence, received the beautiful plantation on the Potomac. He named it Mount Vernon in honor of Admiral Vernon, an English naval commander under whom he had fought in the West Indies.

To George fell a smaller plantation. He could hardly

hope to go to England to study, but went to a school near his birthplace. Here he studied hard, mastering mathematics and business papers of all sorts. The book into which he copied business letters and papers



THE BOYHOOD HOME OF WASHINGTON

Here on the site of the farmhouse, a slope on the river bank, stands the first monument erected to Washington, the bric k from the great chimney forming its foundation

shows how careful he was. He liked to study surveying, and became skillful at it. He could mark off the boundaries of farms and lay out roads.

As a boy George Washington also learned many useful things outside of school. He became a skillful horseback



WASHINGTON'S SURVEYING INSTRUMENTS

rider, for every Virginia plantation had fine riding horses. People lived so far apart that they had to ride horseback when they visited one another and when they went to church or to town.

Even while a boy Washington was learning the ways of a woodsman. With only a gun and a dog for companions, he made long trips into the forests, where no road or path showed the way. He could cross rivers without bridge or boat, could build a shelter at night, could trap, and shoot, and cook over an open fire. All this knowledge was soon put to use.

Vernon, where he met many fine people. Among these visitors he admired most an old English nobleman, Lord Fairfax, who had come to spend the rest of his days beyond the Blue Ridge in the beautiful valley of the Shenandoah.

George was

60. Washington as surveyor. Lord Fairfax was pleased with Washington, who was then



WASHINGTON AS A WOODSMAN

tall, strong, active, and manly looking, although but sixteen years old. Lord Fairfax decided to put young

Washington in charge of surveying some of the wild lands which he owned across the mountains. Accordingly, one

spring Washington, with a number of companions, started out.

The trip was full of danger. There were no roads, bridges, or houses after the party reached the mountains; but deep rivers, wild animals, and savage Indians were plentiful. Some nights they slept in rude huts, other nights in tents, but



WASHINGTON SURVEYING LORD FAIRFAX'S LANDS

more often under the stars. One night they saw a party of Indians dance their wild war dance to the music of a rude drum, made by stretching a hide over a pot, and to the noise of a rattle, made by putting shot in a gourd.

Within a month Washington was back with maps and figures showing just what lands belonged to Lord Fairfax. Other work came quickly. For three years Washington was hard at work in that western wilderness marking out the boundary lines of the settlers' lands. It was a rough but health-giving life and made bones and muscles strong.

61. Washington as a soldier against the French. Suddenly Washington's whole life was changed. His brother Lawrence died and left to George the care of his only daughter and the beautiful Mount Vernon home. At the age of twenty Washington found himself at the head of two large plantations. But he had hardly begun

his new duties when he was called to serve his governor

and the king.



THE SURVEYING PARTY AT AN INDIAN WAR DANCE

The French in Canada were building a chain of forts from Lake Erie to the Ohio River. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia had sent orders for them to get out of the country, but his messenger did not get within a hundred miles of the French soldiers.

It was probably Lord Fairfax who said to the governor: "Here is the very man for you; young and daring, but sober minded and responsible, who only lacks opportunity to show the stuff that is in him."

In October, 1753, Washington, not yet twenty-two, set out with servants, horses, and two companions for the French posts. One companion was the old Dutch soldier who had taught Washington to use the sword, and the other was the famous backwoodsman, Christopher Gist. They pushed on through deep forests, over the mountains, across swift rivers, to the Indian village near where Pittsburgh stands. From there Washington hurried on to the fort on French Creek.

The French commander received him with great politeness, and tried to keep him many days. But Washington

saw that the French were really preparing to fight to hold this "gateway to the West."

The Frenchmen very politely said that they intended to hold that region at all hazard. Washington and his party at once started back to Williamsburg with the answer.

Washington forward with about one hundred and fifty men to cut a road through the forests and over the mountains. But the French had already reached and built Fort Duquesne, where the Ohio is formed, and were then hurrying forward a party to look for the English. Just after Washington's men crossed the mountains they surprised the French scouts, killed their commander, and took the others prisoners. Young Washington wrote



GREENWAY COURT, THE VIRGINIA HOME OF LORD FAIRFAX

Surmounting the broad, sweeping roof, pierced by dormer windows, were two belfries, doubtless designed for bells to call the settlers together when an Indian uprising was feared

home that he had heard the whistle of bullets and liked the music.

Although Washington's company soon grew to three hundred and fifty men, he could go no farther, for a French force numbering several times his own was now close upon him. A battle followed. Standing knee deep in mud and water, the English fired all day at the hidden foe. Their ammunition was about gone, and their men were falling. Washington surrendered the fort, and the little army, with sad hearts, started home along their newly made road.

62. Washington and Braddock. But these were stirring times in Virginia, for an English general, Braddock, had come up the Potomac; and soldiers, cannon, and supplies were passing right by the doors of Mount Vernon. Every day Washington looked upon the king's soldiers, and saw the flash of sword and bayonet. How could he keep out of it? General Braddock liked the young

Virginian, and made him an officer on his staff.

The army, over two thousand strong, slowly crossed the mountains, and by July had almost reached Fort Duquesne. One day nearly one thousand French and Indians swarmed on both sides of the road, and from behind the safe cover of trees poured a deadly fire upon Braddock's men.



WASHINGTON ON HIS WAY BACK FROM THE FRENCH POSTS

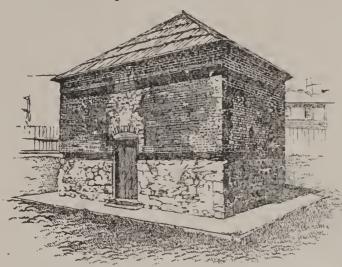
Washington urged Braddock to permit the English to take to the trees and fight Indian fashion, as the Virginians were doing, but Braddock forced his men to stand and be shot down by the unseen foe. Braddock



WASHINGTON AND THE VIRGINIANS SAVE BRADDOCK'S ARMY

himself was mortally wounded. Washington had two horses shot under him and his clothes pierced by four bullets. The British regulars soon ran madly back upon the soldiers in the rear. They threw away guns and left their cannon and wagons, while the Virginians under Washington kept the Indians back. The British army retreated to Philadelphia, but Washington returned to Virginia, where he received the thanks of the Burgesses. He at once collected troops, and hastened into the Shenandoah Valley to protect the settlers from the French and Indians. Washington remained at the frontier for some time.

63. Washington meets his future wife. One day while on his way to Williamsburg, Washington halted at a



THE OLD BLOCK HOUSE, PITTSBURGH
Still standing today in the heart of the city, formed
part of Fort Pitt

plantation to take dinner with a friend. There he was introduced to Mrs. Martha Custis, a charming young widow of his own age.

After dinner the conversation with her was too interesting for the young officer

to see the horses being led back and forth near the window. The horses were stabled again. After supper Washington was not yet ready to mount. Not until late in the afternoon next day did he mount and ride away with all speed for the capital. On his return, he visited Mrs. Custis at her own beautiful plantation, and did not leave until he had her promise of marriage.

Great armies were already gathering. William Pitt, who sent Wolfe to capture Quebec, also ordered General Forbes to march against Fort Duquesne. But it was November before the army reached the Ohio. The French and Indians had nearly all gone to fight on the St. Lawrence, and the place was easily captured. It is said that Washington himself ran up the English flag The fort's name was changed to Fort Pitt.

64. Old days in Virginia. Washington now hastened home to claim his bride. To the wedding came the new royal governor in scarlet and gold, and the king's officers in bright uniforms. There, too, came the great planters

with their wives dressed in the best that the yearly ship could bring from London. The bride rode home in a coach drawn by six beautiful horses, while Washington, well mounted, rode by the side of the coach, attended by many friends on horseback.

The hardy settlers of the frontier, grateful to their brave defender, had already elected him to represent them in the House of Burgesses. He was proud to take his young wife to the meeting of the Burgesses when the old capital town was at its gayest, and when the planters came pouring in to attend the governor's reception.

Washington had already taken his seat among the



A RECEPTION AT THE GOVERNOR'S

At these receptions gay cavaliers and high-born ladies trod the stately minuet or danced the famous Virginia reel

Burgesses when the speaker arose and, in a very eloquent speech, praised him and presented him the thanks of the House for his gallant deeds as a soldier. Washington was so confused to hear himself so highly praised, that,



SCENE AT MOUNT VERNON IN THE DAYS OF WASHINGTON

when he arose to reply, he could not say a word. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the speaker, "your modesty is equal to your valor, and that surpasses any language that I possess."

Washington took his bride to Mount Vernon, and there began the life that he enjoyed far more than the life of a soldier. He felt a deep interest in everything on the plantation. Early every morning he visited his stables and his kennel, for he was fond of horses and

dogs. He then mounted a spirited horse and rode over his plantation to look at the growing fields of tobacco or wheat, or at the work of his slaves.

When the



FOX HUNTING IN VIRGINIA

In some sections of our country this popular sport of the Virginia colonists is still followed as in the days of George and Martha Washington

king's inspectors, both in the West Indies and in London, saw barrels of flour marked "George Washington,

Mount Vernon," they let them pass, for they were always good. He looked after his own and his wife's plantations so well that in a few years he was one of the richest men in America.

But besides such duties, there were many simple pleasures to be enjoyed at Mount Vernon. Here his soldier friends always found a warm welcome. Lord Fairfax and other Virginia gentlemen went often to Mount Vernon to enjoy a fox chase. Sometimes Mrs.

Washington and the ladies rode with dash and courage after the hounds. Now and then boating parties on the wide Potomac were the order of the day. Many times the halls

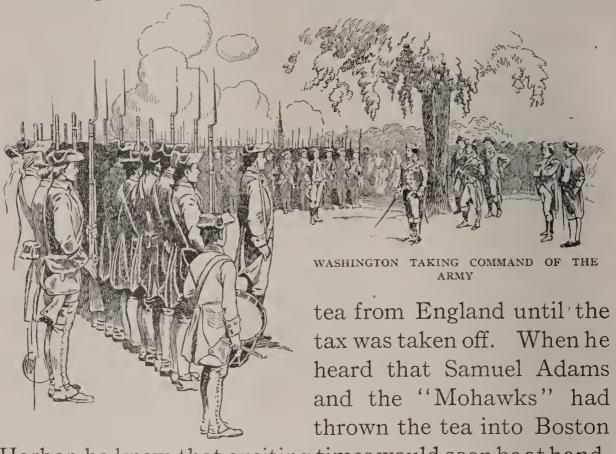


WASHINGTON DRILLING HIS VIRGINIANS

and grounds of Mount Vernon rang with the merry shouts and laughter of younger people, guests who had come from miles around, for George and Martha Washington were young in spirit.

65. The mutterings of war. One day in June, 1765, Washington came back from Williamsburg and told his family and neighbors about the bold resolutions and fiery speech of a member named Patrick Henry. He said that many older members opposed Henry. Washington took Henry's side, but his friends, the Fairfaxes, took the king's side in favor of the Stamp Act. This law required Americans to pay for a special stamp on any legal paper.

When the king put a tax on tea, Washington and many of his neighbors signed an agreement not to buy any more



Harbor, he knew that exciting times would soon be at hand.

The very next year the king ordered more soldiers to go to Boston, and the Boston port was closed. The colonies saw the danger, and sent their best men to hold the first Continental Congress at Philadelphia (1774).

Virginia sent George Washington, Richard Henry Lee, Patrick Henry, and other great men. Washington was not an orator, and made no speech in the Congress, as others did. He was a man of deeds. His time had not yet come.

66. Washington made commander of the American armies. In the last days of April, 1775, news came that there had been fighting in Massachusetts. Washington, dressed in the buff and blue uniform of a Virginia colonel, hurried to Philadelphia to the meeting of the second

Continental Congress. His day had now come. It was a time for deeds. The American army at Boston must have a head. John Adams arose in Congress and said that for the place of commander he had "but one gentleman in mind—a gentleman from Virginia—whose skill and experience as an officer, and whose great talents would command the approbation of all America, and unite the colonies better than any other person in the Union."

Before all these words were spoken, Washington, much moved, had left the room. Congress elected him unanimously to be commander in chief of its armies.

On Cambridge Common, under the famous Harvard Elm, on July 3, 1775, Washington drew his sword and took command of the Continental army. There was a great task before him. He had to drill the troops, collect



SCENE OF WASHINGTON'S CAMPAIGNS IN THE NORTH

cannon from Ticonderoga, which Americans had captured, and get ready to drive the British from Boston.

67. He wins Boston and loses New York. It took all winter to do these things. Then one night in March, 1776,



At Murray Hill, then a great farmstead, now the heart of New York
City, Mrs. Murray entertained them so delightfully two hours
slipped away, and the Americans were out of reach

School Stati, Saw
Washington's
Cannon Doint-

Washington secretly sent some of his best troops to build a fort on Dorchester Heights near Boston harbor. The next morning Howe, the new British general, saw Washington's cannon point-

ing down on his army and ships. He immediately put his army on board and sailed away. This was a victory without a fight.

Washington took his army to New York. Already he had built a fort on Long Island to protect the city. He was none too quick, for Howe came with thirty thousand men and many warships.

In the battle on Long Island, a part of Washington's army was defeated. General Howe planned to capture the defeated troops next day, but Washington was too shrewd. In the night he collected all the boats in that region and rowed his army over to New York before the British knew what he was doing.

The great British army and fleet took the city, but by the help of a patriotic lady, Mrs. Murray, who entertained General Howe and his officers too long for their own good, all of Washington's regiments got away safely up the Hudson. During the fall of 1776, General Howe tried to get above Washington and capture him. But he did neither, for Washington's troops defeated the British at both Harlem Heights and White Plains.

While at Harlem Heights, Washington felt that he must learn some secrets of the enemy. Nathan Hale, a young officer, volunteered to bring General Washington the information he wanted; but Hale was caught by the British and hanged. "I only regret," he said, "that I have but one life to lose for my country."

General Howe then turned back as if to march against Philadelphia and capture Congress. Washington quickly



WASHINGTON ON THE MARCH TO TRENTON

All night, thinly clad, many without shoes and with bleeding feet, over the frozen ground, on marched the shivering men, bringing at daybreak disaster to the Hessians asleep after their Christmas revels

threw a part of his army across the Hudson into New Jersey but he had to retreat. The British followed in a hot chase across New Jersey. Washington crossed the Delaware, and took with him all the boats for many





HESSIAN FLAG
From a photo of the flag
taken by Washington from
the Hessians at Trenton and
now in the museum at
Alexandria

miles up and down the river. The British decided to wait until they could cross on the ice. Some of their generals thought the war was about over, and hastened back to New York to spend the Christmas holidays.

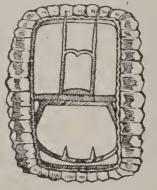
68. Washington wins two great victories. Those were, indeed, dark days for the Americans. Hundreds of Washington's soldiers had gone home discouraged, and many other faint-hearted Americans thought the cause lost, and were again promising obedience to George III. But the people

did not yet know Washington.

On Christmas night, with two thousand five hundred picked men, Washington took to his boats, and crossed the Delaware in spite of the floating ice. Nine miles away, in Trenton, lay the Hessians, foreign soldiers whom George III had hired to fight his American subjects.

On went the little army in spite of the biting cold and blinding snow. Two men were frozen to death and others were numb with cold.

"Our guns are wet," said an officer. "Then





KNEE BUCKLES WORN BY GENERAL WASHINGTON

use the bayonet!" replied Washington. There was a sudden rush of many tramping feet and the roar of

cannon in the streets. The Hessian general was killed, and one thousand of his men surrendered.

These were a strange lot of prisoners. Not one spoke a word of English or cared anything for George III. No doubt they wished themselves at home on that morning. But the Hessians were not more sur-



prised at the victory than the were British generals in New York.

Cornwallis, the British commander, hurried forward with troops to capture Washington, but rested his army at Trenton. That night Washington's army stole away, and Cornwallis awoke in the morning to hear the booming of Washington's cannon at Princeton, where Washington and his men were defeating another part of the British army. Cornwallis hastened to Princeton. It was too late. Washington was safe among the heights of Morristown, where Cornwallis did not dare attack him.

These two victories turned the tide and aroused the Americans. Reënforcements and supplies made Washington's army stronger and more comfortable.

The next spring (1777) General Howe decided to capture Philadelphia. But Washington boldly moved his army across Howe's line of march. Howe did not want to fight, so he put his army on board his ships,

sailed around into the Chesapeake, landed, and marched for the "rebel capital," as the British called Philadelphia.



GEORGE WASHINGTON

From the Gibbs-Channing portrait painted by Gilbert Stuart, the first portrait of Washington, now in the possession of Samuel P. Avery, of New York

At Brandywine Creek, south of Philadelphia, again Washington faced him. A severe battle was fought. Each side lost about a thousand men. The Americans slowly retreated. In this battle Lafayette, a young French nobleman fighting for America, was wounded.

69. The winter at Valley Forge. The British slowly made their way to Philadelphia. Washington remained for the winter at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill River, twenty miles northwest of Phila-

delphia. There, in the deep woods, among the hills, and in log huts built by their own hands, the American forces passed a winter so full of suffering that it makes one shudder to read the story.

When the army marched into Valley Forge, "their route could be traced on the snow by the blood that oozed from their bare, frost-bitten feet." Washington wrote to Congress that nearly three thousand of his men were "barefoot or otherwise naked."

A part of the army had no bread for three days, and for two days no meat. Hundreds had no beds, and were glad to sleep on piles of straw. Others had no blankets, and sat up at night before the fire to keep from freezing. Many sickened and died. But in Philadelphia, the well-fed British soldiers had a gay season, with balls and banquets.

Washington grieved over the suffering of his men, but never lost heart. All the winter through, by the aid of General Steuben, a noble German officer, he drilled his men. In the spring when the British started back to New York, he gave them such a bayonet charge at Monmouth, New Jersey (1778), that they were glad to escape that night, instead of stopping to bury their dead.

70. The crowning victory of Yorktown. For the next three years the British army remained in New York, not daring to come out and attack General Washington's army.

Finally, in the summer of 1781, General Lafayette, whom Washington had sent to Virginia to watch the British army there, sent him word that Cornwallis had come up from the Carolinas, and had taken his position at Yorktown. Washington also got word that a large



THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS

After the painting by John Trumbull which hangs in the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington

French war fleet was coming to the coast of Virginia to aid the Americans.

Washington now saw his chance. He ordered Lafayette to watch Cornwallis while he himself took two thousand ragged Continentals and four thousand French troops in bright uniforms, and slipped away from New York. He was almost in Philadelphia before the British or his own soldiers could guess where he was going.

At Yorktown, Washington and his army found both Lafayette and the French fleet keeping watch. Day and night the siege went on amid the roar of cannon. When all was ready, then came the wild charge of the Americans and the French in the face of British cannon and over British breastworks. The outer works were won, and Cornwallis saw that he must surrender. Seven thousand of the king's troops marched out and gave up their arms (1781).

The victory at Yorktown made all Americans happy, and they rang bells, fired cannon, built bonfires, and praised Washington and Lafayette. But England was now tired of war, and many of her great men declared



WASHINGTON'S RESIGNATION
After the painting by Trumbull in the Capitol at Washington

in favor of peace, which was soon made, in 1783.

71. Washington bids his officers and Congress farewell. Washington bade farewell to the soldiers with whom he had

fought so long. The parting with his officers in Fraunces' Tavern, New York, was a touching scene. With tears

in his eyes, and with a voice full of tenderness, he embraced each one as he bade him good-by. It was like the

parting of a father from his sons.

Washington journeyed to Annapolis, Maryland, where Congress was then held, to give back the authority of commander in



MOUNT VERNON, THE HOME OF WASHINGTON

chief which Congress had bestowed on him eight years before. How unselfish had been the conduct of Washington in refusing pay for his services! How noble was the act of giving up his power over an army which idolized him, and which he might have used to make himself king. But he did not think of these things as he hastened to his beautiful Mount Vernon to enjoy Christmas time once more with his loved ones.

Soon visitors began to come—old soldiers, beloved generals, and great statesmen of America, as well as distinguished people from Europe. They all wanted the honor of visiting the man who had led the American armies to victory, but who, again, was only a Virginia planter.

72. Washington elected first president. The American people, however, would not let him long enjoy Mount Vernon. When they met to make a new Constitution, or plan of government, he was chairman of the meeting. When that government was to go into operation they would have no other man for their first president than George Washington.

In 1789 he once more bade Mount Vernon and his aged mother good-by, and began the journey to New York, which was at that time the capital of the new nation. What a journey! It was almost one continual procession and celebration. At every town and roadside the people came to show their love for Washington, whom they rightly called the "Father of his Country." School children scattered flowers in his way and young women sang patriotic songs as he passed under decorated arches. When he reached New York Harbor the bay was white with the sails of many nations. Crowds thronged the streets, cannon boomed, and flags were thrown to the breeze to welcome him.

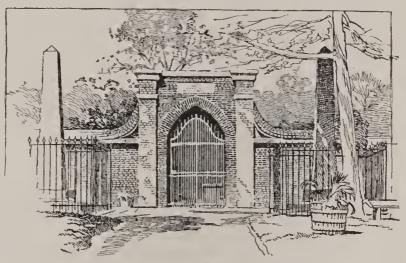


WASHINGTON'S GRAND ENTRY INTO NEW YORK CITY, 1789 From a chromo-lithograph after an original drawing by Alphonse Bigot

On April 30, 1789, standing on the balcony of Federal Hall in Wall Street, Washington took the oath of office,

and pledged himself to govern the people according to the Constitution they had just made. He reverently

bent and kissed the Bible, and became the first president of the United States. From the street, from doors and windows, and from the housetops, the people cried: "Long live



WASHINGTON'S TOMB, MOUNT VERNON

George Washington, President of the United States!"

His new office was almost as hard a task as had been the Revolution. He was now in charge of the affairs of the country. He had to see to it that laws were made to protect the rights of every one. Then he had to see that these laws were carried out. He could not guide himself by what another President had done, for there had been none before him.

But Washington directed the new ship of state so that it suffered no harm. When it looked as though we would have another war with England, he wisely preserved peace. So well were the people satisfied that they made him president a second time. When they offered him the office for a third term he refused. Thousands came to see him leave the capital. As he gave them his final farewell, tears rolled down his cheeks, and men cried like children.

He was glad to get back to Mount Vernon, for he had grown old and weary in serving his country. He spent his remaining years among the scenes he loved so well. He died in 1799, mourned as a father by the whole people.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. George Washington was born on the Potomac, and went to school near his birthplace. 2. He learned horseback riding and how to find his way in the deep forests. 3. He became a surveyor in the Shenandoah for Lord Fairfax. 4. Governor Dinwiddie sent Washington to order the French to leave the Ohio. 5. Washington joined Braddock's campaign against the French. 6. He married Mrs. Martha Custis, and was elected to the House of Burgesses. 7. He went to first Continental Congress, and the second Congress made him commander over the Continental Army. 8. He drove the British out of Boston, outwitted them around New York, retreated across the Jerseys, and then beat them at Trenton and Princeton. q. He fought at Brandywine, suffered at Valley Forge, penned the British up in New York, and captured Cornwallis at Yorktown. 10. After the war he retired to Mount Vernon, but was made first president of the new Republic.

Study Questions. 1. Where was Washington born? 2. What things did he love to do besides study? 3. Who was Lord Fairfax and what did he engage Washington to do? 4. Why was he chosen for the mission to the French and what was the result? 5. Picture Braddock's defeat. 6. What did Washington and his troops do after the British were defeated? 7. What news did Washington bring back to Mount Vernon in 1765? 8. Who went to Congress with him and how did a member speak of him? 9. Picture the scene in the second Congress. 10. How did Washington outwit Howe? 11. Who was Nathan Hale? 12. Picture the capture of the Hessians. 13. Tell of the winter at Valley Forge. 14. Who was Steuben and what did he do? 15. Picture the capture of Cornwallis. 16. Tell of Washington's unselfish conduct during and after the war. 17. Picture his journey to New York.

Suggested Readings. Washington: Cooke, Stories of the Old Dominion, 94–139; Blaisdell and Ball, Hero Stories from American History, 62–76, 123–155; Hart, Camps and Firesides of the Revolution, 239–255, 261–266, 307–309; Glascock, Stories of Columbia, 101–113; Baldwin, Four Great Americans, 9–68; Hart, How Our Grandfathers Lived, 45–47; Mabie, Heroes Every Child Should Know, 274–288; Hawthorne, Grandfather's Chair, 186–191; Magill, Stories from Virginia History, 56–78, 79–94; Wister, The Seven Ages of Washington.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, WHO HELPED TO WIN OUR INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA

73. Benjamin Franklin, a poor boy. Franklin was born in Boston (1706). His father was a poor but hardworking man who made soap and candles. Benjamin's nine brothers had learned trades, but his parents had decided that he should be the "scholar of the family."

But a family of seventeen was hard to feed and clothe, and Benjamin was taken out of school at ten and put to work with his father.

Although Benjamin liked to work with tools, he liked

to read better, and spent all his little earnings in buying books. Finally Franklin's parents decided that since he loved books so well he might be a printer, and put him to learn the trade with an older brother.

He longed to write something for his brother's paper. He did so, and put it at night under the door, but he did not dare sign his name to what he had written. His brother showed it to his friends. They praised



ten. His brother showed it

From the original portrait by Joseph Siffrein
Duplessis, in the Museum of Fine Arts,
Boston

it, and it was printed. It was fun for Benjamin to hear people guessing that the writer must be some great man in Boston.

74. He gets a start in Philadelphia. Franklin was now only seventeen, but because of his brother's cruelty he



FRANKLIN AND DEBORAH REED

The first meeting of Franklin and the young girl who was to be his wife

sold his books and left home. After long wanderings he finally reached Philadelphia. He had walked in the rain and mud. He had been in a storm at sea. He was tired and homesick. It was Sunday. But he was so hungry, he thought more of something to eat than of dressing up. was in a sorry plight. With his pockets stuffed with soiled shirts and stockings, and a roll of

bread under each arm and one in his hand, Franklin walked up Market Street, and passed the home of his future wife, Deborah Reed. No wonder she laughed at him. She would have laughed more if some one had said: "There goes a boy who will some day become your husband and the greatest man in Philadelphia."

Franklin found work in a printing office, saved his money, and bought books to study. He got acquainted with other young people who also loved books. With them he often spent his evenings.

To the surprise of Franklin and his brother printers, one day Sir William Keith, the governor of Pennsylvania, called at the shop to see Franklin. Governors did not then pay much attention to poor printers. The governor,

who was dissatisfied with Philadelphia printers, promised to send him to England to buy a printing press. That was fine. Franklin decided to go.

The governor, however, did not even give him letters of introduction, to say nothing of money, and Franklin found himself a stranger in one of the largest cities in the world.

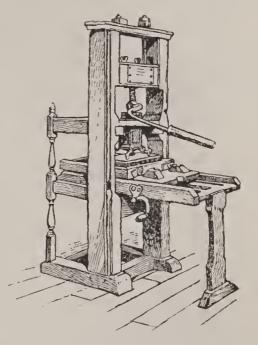
He did not whine or spend his time grumbling, but went bravely to work in a printing office. He set a good example to his beer-drinking comrades by drinking only water. He was stronger and did more work and did it better than any of them.

The next year a Philadelphia merchant persuaded Franklin to return to America to become his clerk. But in a few years he went to work again at his old trade as

printer, and in a short time became the editor of the Pennsylvania Gazette.

Franklin had already married Miss Reed, the young lady who had laughed at him on his first day in Philadelphia.

75. A rising young man. He was now a rising young man in the old Quaker city. From year to year he did many things to help others. He started a circulating library, the first in America, out of which has grown the Philadelphia Public Library. He founded



From a photo of the press used by Franklin when in London, and now in the National Museum, Washington, D. C.

a school, which has become the great University of Pennsylvania, and a society, called the American Philosophical Society, which still holds important meetings. He also formed the first fire department in any American town.

Who has not heard of *Poor Richard's Almanac?* It was printed by Franklin, and the people liked it so well that he sometimes printed ten thousand copies. Here are a few of the quaint and true sayings: "A word to the wise is enough." "God helps those who help themselves."

"Early to bed and early to rise, Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."

Franklin and his young wife kept these rules faithfully. She worked in the printing office as well as in the house. They hired no servants. Their furniture, dress,



A FRANKLIN STOVE

After a model of the stove
invented by Franklin

and food were plain. He ate his break-fast of bread and milk out of a wooden bowl with a pewter spoon. Mrs. Franklin surprised him one day by giving him a china bowl and a silver spoon. She said her husband deserved such things as well as other men.

The people of Philadelphia admired Benjamin Franklin more and more. At the age of thirty he was chosen clerk of the assembly of Pennsylvania, and afterward was elected a lawmaker in the assembly. Every year for ten years his neighbors elected him to help make the laws of the colony.

deputy postmaster-general for all the colonies by the king. He surprised the people by declaring that the

mail should be carried from Philadelphia to Boston every week! Franklin was postmaster-general for more than

twenty years.

76. Franklin and electricity. All the wise men in England and France were excited by news of an experiment made by Benjamin Franklin. He had made electricity by using glass tubes, and he had seen the lightning flash in the storm cloud. He decided to prove, if he could, that lightning and electricity are the same thing. No one had yet done this.



This milestone, still standing at Lyme, marks the distance on a road surveyed by Franklin

He made a kite out of silk, to which he fastened a small iron rod. Then he tied a hempen string to the kite and the rod. To the lower end of the string he tied a silken cord to protect his hand from the electricity. On the string he tied a key.

One day when the storm clouds came rolling up, Franklin sent his kite high up among them, while he waited. Soon the loose fibers on the hempen string moved. Franklin placed his knuckles close to the key, and sparks came flying at his hand.

When the news of this experiment was published some very wise men smiled; others said it was a trick. The great Universities of Oxford and Edinburgh, however, honored him. Societies of wise men in England, France, and Spain elected him a member. He was now a famous man.

77. Franklin's mission to England. Already we have seen that England and her colonies were beginning to



FRANKLIN'S CLOCK

quarrel. What wiser man could be sent to England to defend the colonies by tongue and pen than Benjamin Franklin? He made friends for America among the great men of England.

When the Stamp Act was passed the members of the English Parliament asked him nearly two hundred questions about the effects of the Stamp Act on America. He wrote many letters to great men, and long articles to the English newspapers, explaining how the Stamp Act injured America. Both in England and in America there was rejoicing when Parliament repealed the Stamp Act.

For eight years more, while America was busy opposing the tax on tea, Franklin was in England trying to

get Parliament and the king to give the Americans better treatment. He often talked with William Pitt, the great friend of America. But it was all in vain. There could be no hope of friendship between the two countries.

Franklin saw that war would come, and hastened back to his beloved America, where he arrived just after the battles of Lexington and Concord (1775).

Congress soon sent him to France to influence the king and the people of that country to aid America in winning independence. The French hated the English, but admired Benjamin Franklin. The king gave money secretly, and many French officers came to serve in the American army.

In 1778, Franklin influenced the king of France to take sides openly with the Americans. French warships and French soldiers by thousands now came to help fight our battles.

After helping to make the treaty of peace with England in 1783, Franklin came home with many honors. Though he was nearly eighty years old, the people of Pennsylvania immediately elected him governor.

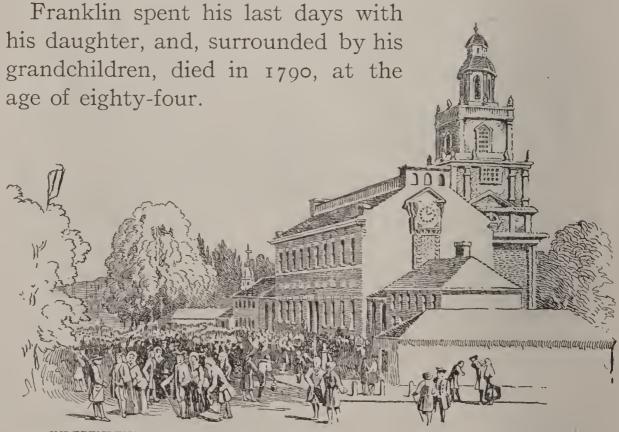


FRANKLIN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE

78. Helps to make our Constitution. Franklin did one more great work for his country. In 1787 the states

sent their wisest men to Philadelphia, Franklin's home, to make a constitution or plan of government. Pennsylvania chose Franklin, with others, to meet with these men in Independence Hall.

George Washington, as we have seen, was the president of this meeting. Many speeches were made, and there was debating for many weeks. Everybody listened when Franklin spoke, for he was a wise man. As he had helped to make, and had signed, the Declaration of Independence, so now, after helping to make the Constitution, he signed it. Many persons did not like the Constitution. Franklin said there were some things in the new plan which he did not like, but declared that he signed it because of the good things it did contain. He showed his wisdom, for it is one of the best plans of government that has ever been made.



INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA, IN THE DAYS OF BENJAMIN FRANKLIN From an old print

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. I. Franklin's parents, who were poor, had seventeen children; hence Benjamin, though a studious fellow, was put to the printer's trade. 2. Franklin wrote articles for his brother's paper, but dared not sign his name to them. 3. Left home and went to Philadelphia. 4. Persuaded to go to London. He returned and married. 5. Franklin started a circulating library, a school which became the University of Pennsylvania, and a society called the American Philosophical Society. 6. He founded the first fire department in America and printed Poor Richard's Almanac. 7. Was elected to the assembly of Pennsylvania; later became deputy postmaster-general for all the colonies. 8. Experiments with electricity. 9. Was sent to France, where he won the help of France in the War of the Revolution. 10. Franklin was governor of the state of Pennsylvania, was a delegate to help make the Constitution, and died at the age of eighty-four.

Study Questions. 1. How long ago was Franklin born?
2. Tell of his school experiences. 3. Tell the story of his work with his brother. 4. Tell the story of the "runaway printer."
5. How did he spend his time in Philadelphia? 6. How did he happen to go to London the first time? 7. What good example did he set to London printers? 8. Why did he return to Philadelphia? 9. What three great institutions did he found? 10. Why did the people like Poor Richard's Almanac? 11. What public offices did he hold? 12. Picture Franklin proving that electricity and lightning are the same. 13. Why did he go to England a second time? 14. How did Franklin aid in the repeal of the Stamp Act? 15. In what great events did he have a part? 16. What was his work in France? 17. What was his last great work? 18. How did he spend his last days? 19. Point out the obstacles he overcame all along in his career.

Suggested Readings. Franklin: Baldwin, Four Great Americans, 71–122; Hart, Camps and Firesides of the Revolution, 158–162; Hart, Colonial Children, 197–199, 210–214; Wright, Children's Stories of Great Scientists, 71–89; Bolton, Famous American Statesmen, 38–66; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 65–76.

PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, TWO FAMOUS MEN OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA BY TONGUE AND PEN

PATRICK HENRY, THE ORATOR OF THE REVOLUTION

79. The Stamp Act. In 1765 the English government made a very unwise law. It was known as the Stamp Act. This required that all legal papers, all newspapers, and a few other things must have special stamps on them. The colonists must pay for these. It was a kind of tax. This angered the Americans. What right had the government over in England to tax them over here?

Leading men in every one of the thirteen colonies spoke and wrote against the Stamp Act. Of all the men who



PATRICK HENRY

After the painting by Thomas Sully, owned by
William Wirt Henry, the orator's
grandson, Richmond, Virginia

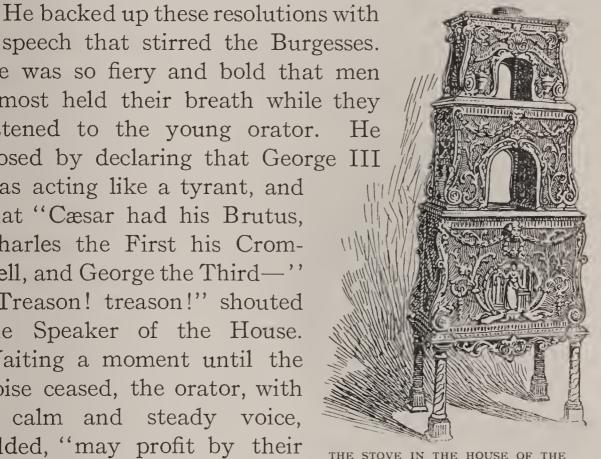
did so, Patrick Henry, of Virginia, was the most eloquent and fiery. He had been elected by the people of his county to go up to Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, to help make the laws. There were many able men in that old House of Burgesses, but none of them had taken the lead in opposing the king's plan of a stamp tax.

One day young Henry,

although a new member, snatched a blank leaf from a law book and wrote down a set of resolutions declaring

that only the Virginia assembly could tax Virginians, and that any one who denied this was an enemy of the colony.

a speech that stirred the Burgesses. He was so fiery and bold that men almost held their breath while they listened to the young orator. closed by declaring that George III was acting like a tyrant, and that "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third-'' "Treason! treason!" shouted the Speaker of the House. Waiting a moment until the noise ceased, the orator, with a calm and steady voice, added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."



THE STOVE IN THE HOUSE OF THE BURGESSES This stove is now in the State Library of Virginia

Henry's resolutions were passed, and were printed in almost every newspaper in the colonies. They made the people more determined than ever not to buy stamped paper.

80. Young Patrick Henry. Who was this young lawyer that stirred these dignified Virginia gentlemen in powdered hair, knee breeches, and silver buckles?

Patrick Henry was born in Virginia (1736). His father was a well-educated Scotchman, who taught school and became a lawyer. His mother was of Welsh blood. Patrick went to school, but he liked to hunt and fish far better than to study. He was a puzzle to his parents.

By the time he was eighteen he had failed as a student, as a clerk, and as a storekeeper. He then married. The parents on both sides helped them to start farming with a few slaves. In two years Patrick Henry was forced to sell. Once more he tried keeping a country store. In three years the store closed its doors and Patrick Henry,



PATRICK HENRY SPEAKING IN THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES

From an engraving after the original painting by Rothermal

aged twenty-three, was without an occupation.

He now turned to the study of law. Although not in love with school when a boy, he liked to read the Bible. He also had a strong liking for history, and, in his youth, read the histories Greece, of Rome, of England, and of the colonies. By a few months of hard study of the law he passed the examination. He succeeded from the

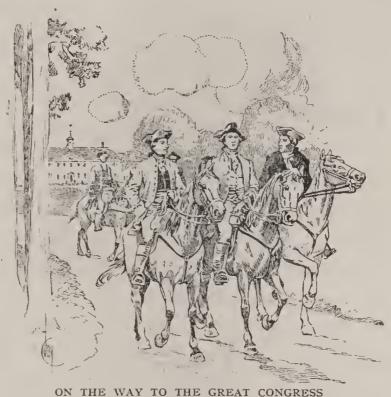
first, and in less than four years had been engaged in more than one thousand cases.

The people liked him and made him a member of the House of Burgesses. There he made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act.

Many great Englishmen, such as William Pitt and Edmund Burke, opposed the stamp tax. The Americans were happy when they heard of its repeal (1766).

81. New taxes and growing resistance. As if the king and parliament could learn nothing, they passed a Tea Act the very next year, placing a tax on all tea imported into the colonies. Then the Americans every-

where refused to buy the tea and pay the tax. When the tea ships came to America the people of New York and Philadelphia sent them back, and the "Sons of Liberty" at Annapolis burned a ship full of tea. At Charleston the tea was stored in cellars and sold for the people when war



ON THE WAY TO THE GREAT CONGRESS AT PHILADELPHIA

came. The king's governor at Boston refused to permit the ships to carry the tea back to England, but the



ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND

people, one night, threw the tea into the Atlantic Ocean. King George grew angry at such "tea parties," and had laws passed to punish Boston. More British soldiers were sent to America to force the people in the resisting colonies to

obey the laws which they detested.

The colonies, more excited than ever, decided to hold

a great Congress in Philadelphia (1774). Virginia, like the others, sent her best men. There, in Carpenter's



Hall, a building still standing, Henry made friends of leading men from other colonies. There he met Samuel Adams, who was doing with his pen what Henry was doing with his tongue, and they became life-long friends.

One day, when speaking in favor

of united action, Patrick Henry declared: "The distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers, and New Englanders are no more. I am not a Virginian, but an American."

As Patrick Henry talked with men from other colonies and heard how the king's troops were acting at Boston, he was convinced war must come. He went home and urged Virginia people to arm for the coming struggle. The king's governor refused to permit meetings in the

old capitol at Williamsburg, so they were held in St. John's Church, Richmond, a church still standing. Here Patrick Henry offered resolutions declaring that Virginia should arm herself for the coming war. It was a serious time, and these were serious resolutions. Should the thirteen struggling colonies go to war with one of the greatest nations in the world? Would it not be wise to send more petitions



OLD POWDER HOUSE, WILLIAMSBURG

The removal of the powder from this house to a British man-of-war caused the first uprising of the Virginians

to the king? Some of the ablest men in Virginia opposed Henry's resolutions.

82. Patrick Henry defends his resolutions. Patrick Henry listened to their speeches with smothered excite-

ment. When he rose to defend his resolutions, his face was pale and his voice was trembling. But soon audience forgot what other men had said. They leaned forward and listened as if no other man had spoken. He stirred their deepest feelings he declared: when "We must fight! repeat it, Sir, we must fight! An appeal to arms and the God of Hosts is all that is left to us. They tell us,



As a favorite declamation this great speech still rouses the spirit of patriotism in America

Sir, that we are weak; unable to cope with so powerful an adversary. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be the next week or the next year? Sir, we are not weak, if we make a proper use of the means which the God of Nature hath placed in our power. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery. Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable, and let it come! I repeat it, Sir: Let it come!—The war is actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. Our brothers are already in

the field! Why stand we here idle? Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains



PATRICK HENRY
From the bronze figure of the Washington monument by Crawford at Richmond

and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death!"

One who heard this speech says that when the orator spoke the words "chains and slavery," he stood like a slave with his body bent, his wrists crossed, as if bound by chains, and that his face looked like that of a hopeless slave. After a solemn pause he raised his eyes and chained hands toward heaven, and said, as if in prayer: "Forbid it, Almighty God!" He then slowly bent his body still nearer the floor,

looking like a man oppressed, heart-broken, and helpless, and said: "I know not what course others may take." Then, rising grandly and proudly, with every muscle strained, as if he would break his imaginary chains, he exclaimed: "Give me liberty, or give me death!"

The men who heard this speech never forgot it. The people of Virginia now pushed forward the work of arming her men. And when her own Washington went to take command of the army at Boston he found Virginia soldiers there wearing on their hunting shirts the words "Liberty or death!".

From this time on Patrick Henry was in the forefront of the struggle with England. Virginia sent him to Congress, then she made him an officer in the army, and finally not only made him the first governor after independence was declared, but elected him to that office three times in succession, and offered him the same office three times more.

Patrick Henry finally retired to his plantation and refused all offers of office. Many old friends and many great strangers went to visit him in his old age as one of the great men of the American Revolution. In the year of his death (1799), when some danger threatened Virginia Patrick Henry came forth at Washington's request, old and feeble as he was, and aroused the people once more with his burning words. They elected him to the House of Burgesses by a great majority, but he did not live to take office.

SAMUEL ADAMS, THE LEADER OF THE PEOPLE

83. Adams works against the Stamp Act. While Patrick Henry was stirring the feelings of the people by his fiery eloquence, Samuel Adams was stirring them by strong arguments in his writings, to oppose the acts of king and of parliament.

Samuel Adams was born in Massachusetts (1722). While he loved school and books he cared very little for spending his time in outdoor amusements. At eighteen Samuel was graduated from Harvard College. His parents hoped that he would be a minister, but he began to study law. His mother was so opposed to his becoming a lawyer that he gave up the study and turned to business. He set up in business for himself, but, like

Patrick Henry, soon lost all. He next went into business with his father, but in that, too, he failed. Finally

Samuel Adams turned to politics. While a student in Harvard he

While a student in Harvard he had debated the question whether it was right to resist the king to save the country from ruin. He took an active part in debating clubs and soon began to write for the newspapers, encouraging resistance.

One day the people of Boston read in the papers the fiery resolutions of Patrick Henry. Samuel Adams seized his pen and began his fiery attacks on the Stamp Act.

of Fine Arts, Boston The Boston people elected him to be their representative in the Massachusetts assembly. More and more he took the lead in the movement against the Stamp Act. He went about the shops, into the stores, wherever he found people to listen to him.

He helped them form a society, called the Sons of Liberty, which destroyed the hated stamps as soon as they arrived. He talked with the merchants, and they signed a pledge not to buy any more goods from England until the Stamp Act was repealed. At this the British merchants felt the loss of trade and joined in the cry against the Stamp Act.

84. Colonists refuse to buy tea. We have seen that parliament, after the Stamp Act was repealed, passed the famous Tea Act. The Americans were angry again,



SAMUEL ADAMS
From the original painting by John
Singleton Copley representing Adams
in 1771, now hanging in the Museum
of Fine Arts, Boston

and the Sons of Liberty declared that no tea should be landed. The merchants took the pledge again to buy no more English goods, and patriotic women began to make tea out of leaves of other plants.

Samuel Adams again took up his pen, and wrote the famous "Circular Letter," which urged all the colonies to unite and stand firm in opposing the tax on tea. This letter made King George very angry, but Samuel Adams only wrote the more.

Night after night as the people passed his window they saw by his lamp that he was busy with his pen, and said to one another: "Samuel Adams is hard at work writing against the Tories." People in England and America who took the king's side in these disputes were called Tories.

The king now sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston

to force the people to pay the tea tax. There were frequent quarrels between the soldiers and the people. One evening in a street quarrel the soldiers killed three men and wounded eight others (1770). Immediately the fire bells rang and great crowds of angry people filled the streets. The next day they filled to overflowing Faneuil Hall, the "Cradle of Liberty."



SAMUEL ADAMS WRITING THE FAMOUS "CIRCULAR LETTER"

A still larger meeting in the Old South Church cried out that both regiments of soldiers must leave town.

Adams and other leaders were sent to the king's officers to tell them what the people had said. Before the governor and the general, backed by the king's authority and by two regiments, stood plain Samuel Adams, with only the voice of the people to help him.

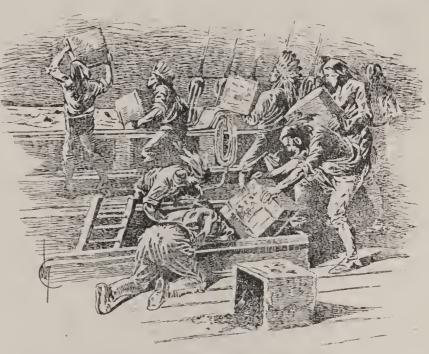
The governor, unwilling to obey the demand of the people, said he would send one regiment away. But Samuel Adams stood firm, and said: "Both regiments or none!" The governor finally gave up, and Samuel Adams, the man of the people, was a greater leader than ever before.

The king now tried to trick the Americans into paying the tax by selling tea cheaper in America than in England, even with the tax. But the people in all the colonies declared that they objected, not to the price, but to the tax.



The colonists now organized, and determined not to let this cheap tea be sold. They were not a minute too soon, for tea ships were already on their way to America. Great mass meetings in New York and Philadelphia

compelled the tea agents to resign and the tea ships to return home. In Charleston, the agents were forced to resign, and the tea was stored in cellars and sold for the public good during the Revolution. At Annapolis the spirit



THE BOSTON TEA PARTY ABOARD THE TEA SHIP

of the patriots was reflected in the burning of the "Peggy Stewart."

85. The Boston Tea Party. When the ships carrying the cheaper tea arrived in Boston, Samuel Adams set a guard of armed men to keep the tea from being landed.

Town meeting followed town meeting. On December 16, 1773, the greatest one of all was held. Early that morning hundreds of country people started for Boston. They found the shops and stores closed and people standing on the street corners talking earnestly.

At ten o'clock the people met in the Old South Church, and voted that the tea should never be landed. They also sent the owner of the ships to the governor for permission to take the tea ships out past the guns of the fort guarding the harbor.

In the afternoon still greater crowds pushed and

jammed into the seats, aisles, and galleries of that famous church. Samuel Adams was chairman. He made a speech. Other leaders spoke. One stirred the audience by asking "how tea would mix with salt water." Evening came, and candles were lighted. The owner of the tea vessels returned and said the governor would not give him the permission.

Immediately Samuel Adams arose and said: "This meeting can do nothing to save the country!" In a moment the war whoop of the "Mohawks" sounded outside. The crowd rushed out and found the people following a band of men disguised as Indians down where the tea ships lay at anchor. The "Mohawks" went on board, brought up the boxes of tea, broke them open, and threw the tea into the Atlantic Ocean.

That very night Samuel Adams sent fast riders to carry the news to the country towns. The next day, with letters to leaders in other colonies in his saddle-bags, Paul Revere, the great courier of the Revolution, started on his long ride to New York and Philadelphia. As he went from town to town and told the story of the Tea Party the people cheered him, spread dinners for him, built great bonfires, and fired cannon. He saw thousands of people gather in New York and Philadelphia, and he heard them declare that they would stand by Boston.

Boston soon needed help, for the king and parliament passed a law that no ship could enter or leave Boston Harbor, and another which forbade the holding of town meetings. Other hard laws were also passed and an army was sent to Boston to force the people to obey them.

86. The first Continental Congress. We have seen a call go forth for a Congress at Philadelphia (1774). The Massachusetts legislature chose Samuel Adams and his cousin, John Adams, with two others to go to the Congress.

But Samuel Adams was very poor and could not afford to dress in a style suited to meet the rich merchants of New York and Philadelphia and the great planters of the southern colonies. One evening while the family was at tea, in came the most fashionable tailor to take his measure. Next came a hatter, and then a shoemaker. In a few days a new trunk at his door told the story, for in it were a suit of clothes, two pairs of shoes, silver shoe buckles, gold knee buckles, a cocked hat, a gold-headed cane, and a fashionable red cloak. What proof of the people's love for their neighbor!

At New York, Samuel Adams and his friends were kept nearly a week. Many persons in carriages and on horse-

them to Philadelphia, the city of William Penn. People were anxious to see the man who had written the "Circular Letter," who had driven the king's regiments out of Boston, who had planned the Tea Party. Here, in Carpenter's Hall, for the first time, he met George Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, Christopher Gadsden, who was called



CARPENTER'S HALL, PHILADELPHIA

the "Samuel Adams of South Carolina," and many other noble men who became his cherished and life-long friends.

Soon Paul Revere came riding into Philadelphia with the news that the patriots of Boston were in danger of



ASSEMBLY ROOM IN CARPENTER'S HALL
Here met the first Continental Congress of the colonies

being attacked by the British. The Congress immediately declared that if the British made war on Boston, it was the duty of every colony to help her people fight. It looked as if war

might come at any moment.

When Congress was over, Samuel Adams hastened home to help to form, in all the Massachusetts towns, companies of minutemen ready to fight at a moment's warning. The next spring the news got out that British soldiers were going to Concord to destroy the powder and provisions collected there by the minutemen, and also to capture Samuel Adams and John Hancock and send them to England to be tried for treason. The two patriot leaders, fearing arrest, were then in hiding at Lexington. Paul Revere agreed to alarm the minutemen the instant the soldiers left Boston.

87. Paul Revere's midnight ride. Standing by his horse across the river from Boston, one April evening, waiting for signals, Paul Revere saw two lanterns flash their lights from the tower of Old North Church. He mounted and rode in hot haste toward Lexington, arousing the sleeping villages as he cried out: "Up and arm, the regulars are coming!" Soon he heard the alarm gun

of the minutemen and the excited ringing of the church bells. He knew the country was rising.

At Lexington the minutemen who guarded the house where Samuel Adams and John Hancock were sleeping ordered Revere not to make so much noise. "You will soon have noise enough," he shouted. "The regulars are coming!" And he rode on toward Concord.

88. The Battle at Lexington and at Concord Bridge. As the British soldiers reached Lexington at sunrise, on April 19, 1775, the captain of the minutemen gave the command: "Stand your ground. Don't fire unless fired upon. But if they mean to have war, let it begin here!" A bold speech for a captain of only about sixty men

when facing as brave soldiers as Europe had ever seen! The minutemen stood their ground until seven were killed and nine wounded—nearly one-third of their number. Then they retreated.

The British pushed on to Concord. But the minutemen, now coming from



PAUL REVERE ALARMING THE MINUTEMEN
The old Hancock House, where, guarded by the minutemen,
Samuel Adams and John Hancock lay sleeping when
Paul Revere rode by, still stands in Lexington

every direction, made a stand at Concord Bridge. Their musket fire was so deadly that the British started back,

running at times to escape with their lives. At Lexington they fell upon the ground, tired out with the chase the minutemen gave them, and were met by fresh troops from Boston.

Soon the British soldiers were forced to run again, for minutemen by hundreds were gathering, and they seldom missed their aim. From behind rocks, trees, fences, and houses they cut down the tired redcoats. Nearly three hundred British soldiers were killed or wounded before Boston was reached that night.

89. The Battle of Bunker Hill. Day and night for weeks minutemen from other New England colonies, and even from as far south as Virginia, marched in hot haste to Boston. The British general soon found his army in



Boston entirely cut off from the mainland. He resolved to fortify Bunker Hill, but what was his surprise to wake

one morning (June 17) and find the Americans under Colonel Prescott already building breastworks on the hill!

That afternoon three thousand picked troops, in solid columns and with bayonets gleaming, marched up the hill to storm that breastwork. "Don't fire until you can see the whites of their eyes!" said the commander of the minutemen. On came the lines of red, with banners flying and drums beating. From the breastworks there ran a flame of fire which moved down the red coats like grass. They reeled, broke, and ran. They rested. Again they charged; again they broke and ran. They were brave men, and, although hundreds of their companions had fallen, a third time the British charged and won, for the Americans had used up their powder, and they had no bayonets. More



than one thousand British soldiers fell that day. The Americans did not lose half that number. But among the killed was the beloved General Joseph Warren.

go. The second Continental Congress. Just as the British were marching into Lexington on that famous April morning, Samuel Adams, with John Hancock, was leaving for Philadelphia, where Congress was to meet again. As he heard the guns of the minutemen answer the guns of the regulars, Adams said to Hancock: "What a glorious morning is this!"

The members from Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New York were escorted across the Hudson to Newark, New Jersey, and entertained at a great dinner, with speeches. Near Philadelphia, a large procession of armed. men and carriages met and escorted them into the city, where bells told of their coming.

When this Congress met, Samuel Adams seconded the motion of his cousin, John Adams, that Washington be made the general of all the American troops. He saw his own neighbor, John Hancock, made president of the Congress.

'91. The Declaration of Independence. For more than a year Samuel Adams worked hard to get the Congress to make a Declaration of Independence. Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, introduced a motion into the Congress for independence. The Declaration was made, July 4, 1776, and Samuel Adams as a great leader of the Revolution had done his work.

But, with other noble men, he still labored with all his powers, in Congress and at home, to help America win her independence.

After independence had been won, Samuel Adams still continued to serve his state, and was elected governor of Massachusetts only a few years before his death, which occurred in 1803, at the advanced age of eighty-one.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. In 1765 the English government passed the Stamp Act. 2. Great opposition to the Stamp Act in all the colonies. 3. Patrick Henry made a great speech against the Stamp Act. 4. He went to the first Continental Congress and made many friends; came home and made a great speech saying that war would come. 5. Chosen governor of Virginia many times.

6. Samuel Adams studied hard, failed in several occupations, and went into politics. 7. Led the patriots against the soldiers, opposed the Stamp Act, and planned the Tea Party.

8. Samuel Adams sent to Continental Congress where he made many friends. 9. Urged a Declaration of Independence in

1776. 10. Made governor of Massachusetts.

Study Questions. 1. What was the Stamp Act? 2. Why did men in America oppose this act? 3. What did Patrick Henry say in his resolution and in his speech? 4. Picture the scene while Patrick Henry spoke and afterwards. 5. Why did not the Americans like the tea tax? 6. Why did not the king like the American "Tea Parties"? 7. What is a Congress, and why should Patrick Henry and Samuel Adams become good friends? 8. Commit to memory a part of Henry's famous "liberty or death" speech. 9. How did the people

trust Patrick Henry?

10. What did Samuel Adams do against the Stamp Act?
11. What was the "Circular Letter" and why should the king be angry about it? 12. Tell how Samuel Adams drove two regiments out of Boston. 13. What caused a Congress? 14. Tell what Samuel and John Adams saw and did on their way to Philadelphia. 15. Why were people glad to see Samuel Adams? 16. What made war seem likely to happen at any time? 17. Read Longfellow's poem, "The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere." 18. Give an account of the Battle of Lexington. 19. Picture the retreat from Concord to Boston. 20. Picture the charge of the British soldiers at Bunker Hill. 21. What did Samuel Adams hear on his way to the second Continental Congress? 22. Who introduced the motion for independence into the Congress?

Suggested Readings. Patrick Henry: Cooke, Stories of the Old Dominion, 158–180; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 93–101; Magill, Stories from Virginia History, 116–

128.

Samuel Adams: Dawes, Colonial Massachusetts, 42–72; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 10–30; Hart, Camps and Firesides of the Revolution, 162–166; Hawthorne, Grandfather's Chair, 153–189, 205, 206.

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDE-PENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD

GENERALS GREENE, MORGAN, AND MARION, THE MEN WHO
HELPED WIN THE SOUTH FROM THE BRITISH

92. The war in the South. Early in the Revolutionary War, British vessels made an attack on Charleston, South Carolina (1776). But Colonel Moultrie, from his rude fort of palmetto logs, gave them such a welcome that they were glad to get away, and for two years the British gave the southern colonies little trouble.

But in 1778 another British army captured Savannah,



NATHANAEL GREENE
From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale,
once owned by Mrs. William Brenton
Greene, Jr., in Princeton, New Jersey,
and now in Independence Hall,
Philadelphia

Georgia. In 1780, the city of Charleston, South Carolina, with General Lincoln's entire army, surrendered to Cornwallis. Congress then hastened General Gates to the South to check the British, but Cornwallis surprised Gates and cut his army to pieces near Camden.

93. Nathanael Greene, the Quaker general. A more active commander was needed for the southern campaign. Washington chose Nathanael Greene, the "Quaker general," to go south, take command of the

American army, and watch Cornwallis, who had just defeated Gates. Greene was born in Rhode Island, and



GREENE'S
GUN
Now in the
possession of
the Rhode Island Historical Association

was ten years younger than Washington. His father was a farmer, a miner, and a blacksmith on week days, and a Quaker preacher on Sundays.

As a boy Nathanael had plenty of hard work to do, and at thirteen could "only read, write, and cipher." But he was hungry for more knowledge, and began to study Latin, mathematics, philosophy, and history. Besides, he made iron toys, and sold them to buy books. His family got into a lawsuit, and Nathanael took up the study of law. He was called the "learned blacksmith."

When Greene saw that King George was likely to force the Americans to fight, he joined the militia and went to Boston to buy a musket, a very unusual thing for a man in Quaker dress

to do. He hid the gun in his wagon. There he watched General Gage drilling British soldiers. He persuaded one of them to drill his minutemen.

When the stirring news from Lexington reached him, Greene was among the



GREENE CONCEALING THE MUSKET IN HIS WAGON

first to start for Boston, and there Washington found him when he arrived to take command of the army Greene was made one of Washington's generals, and followed his great commander until Washington sent him to the South to win back that part of the country from Cornwallis.

Although General Greene found but a small army in North Carolina, he knew that the Southern men would fight if they had a chance, for they had just killed or

Guilford C. H. TLANTIC OCEAN

SCENE OF THE CAMPAIGNS IN THE SOUTH

captured one thousand British soldiers at the battle of Kings Mountain.

Besides, he had some of the bravest and ablest leaders in America to help him. Among them were Daniel Morgan, Francis Marion, William Washington (a cousin of General Washington), Henry Lee (called "Light Horse Harry"), and Thomas Sumter.

Greene divided his army into two parts. He took one thousand men

and marched into northeastern South Carolina, where Marion and Lee, with small bands of cavalry, stole upon

the British outposts. In broad daylight they charged pell-mell into Georgetown, captured the officer in com-

mand, and got safely away before the British were over their fright.

Greene sent General Morgan and Colonel William Washington with nine hundred men into northwestern South Carolina to threaten some British posts, and to encourage the patriots in the mountains. Very shortly after this, Colonel Washington and his cavalry swooped down on a party of British soldiers and captured two From a miniature painted by John Trumbull now in the Art Gallery of Yale University hundred and fifty of them.



Cornwallis was now thoroughly roused, and resolved to put an end to such events. He therefore ordered his favorite cavalry officer, Colonel Tarleton, to take eleven hundred choice soldiers and capture Morgan and his men.

94. General Morgan. But Morgan was not the kind of man to be caught napping. When a young man, he had fought the French and Indians on the Virginia frontier.

He was at Braddock's defeat. He had once knocked a British officer down for striking him. In an Indian fight he had been shot through the neck and thought himself dying, but, to escape being scalped, locked his arms tightly around his horse's neck, while the horse ran wildly through the woods.

At the head of a company of ninety-six Virginians,

Morgan had marched six hundred miles in twenty-one days, and joined Washington at Boston.



MORGAN'S ESCAPE FROM THE INDIANS

Later, Washington sent him to join in the capture of Burgoyne at Saratoga. His men did such splendid fighting that Burgoyne said to Morgan: "Sir, you command the finest regiment in the world!" Fighting

in the woods of America such a man was likely to be a match for any British officer.

When Morgan heard of Tarleton's approach he retreated to Cowpens. On the top of a long, rising slope, he placed the Continental troops—trained fighters. In the rear he hid Colonel Washington and his cavalrymen.

Some distance in front of the Continentals he placed the militia with orders not to retreat until they had fired twice. In front of the militia Morgan hid a company of deadly sharpshooters in the woods on the right and another company in the woods on the left.

As soon as Tarleton's men came in sight they charged pell-mell, thinking victory an easy matter. The militia and sharpshooters poured in their fire not only twice, but several times, and retreated behind the Continentals, who now poured deadly volleys into the ranks of the oncoming British, and then made at them with their bayonets.

Just at this moment, Colonel Washington's cavalry dashed out and struck the right flank of the redcoats. In another moment the militia, which had re-formed and reloaded, rushed out and struck their left flank. Most of Tarleton's men threw down their guns and surrendered on the spot. Only two hundred and seventy redcoats got away. Tarleton barely escaped after being wounded in a hand-to-hand sword fight with Colonel Washington.

Tarleton was not permitted to forget his defeat. In conversation one day he remarked that he had never seen Colonel Washington. A patriotic lady present replied: "If you had only looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens, you would have had that pleasure."

The defeat of Tarleton at Cowpens roused Cornwallis.



Where General Morgan, in one of the most brilliant battles of the war, defeated the brave but overconfident General Tarleton, destroying the famous legion Tarleton boasted could not be defeated

He destroyed all his heavy baggage, and started in hot haste after Morgan, but failed to catch him.

General Morgan, now broken in health by long years of hard fighting, retired to his home, "Soldiers' Rest,"



THE LAST SALUTE TO MORGAN

in the Shenan-doah Valley. After the war was over his neighbors elected him to Congress, where he gave hearty support to President Washington.

When Daniel Morgan died he

was followed to the grave by the largest procession that the valley had yet seen. The people, who had come from near and far, witnessed a touching sight. They saw seven gray-haired veterans, with old rifles in their hands, stand beside the grave of the hero and fire a military salute. They were the last of that hardy band of ninety-six which had marched with Morgan to Boston to join Washington, nearly thirty years before. This was their last military farewell!

95. The Battle of Guilford Court House. General Greene kept on skillfully retreating. Finally he crossed into Virginia. He and his army were still among friends, and his army was growing. Cornwallis was hundreds of miles from his supplies and from reënforcements. After a few weeks, Greene crossed back into North Carolina and fiercely attacked Cornwallis at Guilford Court House, and killed or wounded one-fourth of his army.

Cornwallis claimed the victory, but instead of attacking Greene he marched his army rapidly to Wilmington, on the seacoast, and from there marched into Virginia, where Washington and Lafayette caught him in a trap at Yorktown.

Greene turned back to South Carolina, where the British still held Charleston and a few other towns. The British lost so many men at Hobkirk's Hill, and at Eutaw Springs, their last important battles in the South, that they were compelled to retreat to Charleston, where they were when the news from Yorktown put an end to serious fighting.

General Greene's work as a soldier was done. Besides the medal presented to him by Congress for the battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, as a token of affection, gave him a large sum of money, and the state of Georgia a

beautiful plantation on the Savannah River, where he died in 1786. His fame as a soldier of the Revolution stands next to that of Washington.

of. Francis Marion. Of all the men who helped Greene win back the South, none was braver than General Francis Marion, whom the British named the "Swamp Fox." Marion was born in South Carolina. His parents were French Huguenots. He was so small that people wondered how he could be so great a soldier.



FRANCIS MARION

After the portrait in the painting by T. Stothard, R.A.

Marion's "Brigade," as his company was called, was made up of only a handful of men, usually less than one

hundred. But they owned and rode the swiftest horses, carried their own guns, and wore their own swords



ONE OF MARION'S MEN

hammered out of old saws by country blacksmiths.

Marion and his men seldom were two nights in the same place. The night was their time to work. At sundown they swung into their saddles, and were soon riding for the enemy's camp. When near, they quietly surrounded the camp, took

aim by the light of the fires, fired, and then rushed up on the frightened British or Tories, and cut them down with their terrible broadswords.

Before daybreak, Marion and his men were hiding safely in some distant swamp or other safe place. If the British chased him too closely his men scattered in different directions, but always made their way to the common hiding place. In a few days they were ready to strike again.

Just after Cornwallis defeated Gates, near Camden, Marion pounced upon a guard of British soldiers that was taking one hundred and fifty prisoners to Charleston, captured them all, and set the prisoners free.

At last Cornwallis ordered Colonel Tarleton to get "Mr. Marion," as he called him. But before Tarleton could act Marion had fallen on a large party of Tories going to join Cornwallis, and killed, captured, or scattered the entire party. Tarleton chased Marion for twentyfive miles, only to find a large swamp through which he could see neither road nor path. He gave up the chase in disgust, declaring he would pursue the "Swamp Fox" no farther.

When Greene returned to the last campaign in South Carolina, he found no better, bolder, or more vigilant helpers than Marion and his "Brigade." Greene gave Marion high praise, and Congress gave him a vote of thanks.

Marion was the true soldier of liberty. He cared nothing for display, only for the success of the patriot cause. Marion thought of his men before himself, and was watchful, patient, and silent. He always struck



"MARION AND HIS MEN" SURPRISE THE BRITISH

Dashing out of the swamp, Marion fell upon the guard of a band of patriot prisoners, killed or captured the British, then set the prisoners to guarding the redcoats

his foes where and when they did not look for him. If they were too strong he vanished like smoke in a breeze. Marion was as true and gentle as he was bold and brave. He was never cruel to prisoners, and was greatly opposed to punishing the Tories after the war was over. Marion's neighbors often elected him to high office and in many other ways showed they admired him.

During the war a British officer was invited to take dinner with Marion. What was his surprise to see only sweet potatoes, baked in the ashes, set before him. After this feast the officer resigned, saying it was useless trying to defeat such soldiers.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Greene went to Boston, saw the British army, returned home and prepared his minutemen. 2. Washington sent him to the Carolinas after the defeat of Gates. 3. When the American army retreated after the battle of Cowpens, Greene turned and fought the battles of Guilford Court House, Hobkirk's Hill, and Eutaw Springs. 4. Daniel Morgan with ninety-six men marched from the Shenandoah Valley to Boston to join Washington. 5. He won the battle of Cowpens against Colonel Tarleton. 6. Francis Marion's "Brigade" was a small number of men, mounted on their own horses, and armed with their own guns and swords. 7. Marion was called the "Swamp Fox," because his men, attacking after nightfall, usually escaped to a swamp before daylight.

Study Questions. 1. Where was Greene born and why was he called "the learned blacksmith"? 2. How did he get his company of minutemen drilled? 3. What leaders did Greene have to help him? 4. Who was General Morgan? 5. What did Burgoyne say to Morgan? 6. Explain how Morgan prepared for the battle of Cowpens. 7. Picture the battle. 8. What anecdote is told of Tarleton? 9. Picture the scene at General Morgan's burial. 10. How did Greene win a victory by retreating? 11. What became of Cornwallis after the battle of Guilford Court House? 12. What other battles did Greene fight? 13. What proofs of affection did South Carolina and Georgia give? 14. What is the rank of Greene as

a general? 15. How many men were there in Marion's "Brigade," how were they armed, and how did they fight? 16. Why did Tarleton call Marion the "Swamp Fox"? 17. Who praised General Marion? 18. Read "The Song of Marion's Men," by William Cullen Bryant.

Suggested Readings. NATHANAEL GREENE: Fiske, Irving's Washington, 430–456; Francis V. Greene, General Greene, 1–22, 94–105, 160–262; Frost, Heroes of the Revolution, 27–75.

Daniel Morgan: Blaisdell and Ball, Hero Stories from American History, 105–122; Brooks, Century Book of the American Revolution, 168–173; Frost, Heroes of the Revolution, 76–80.

Francis Marion: McCrady, South Carolina in the Revolu-

tion, 568-572, 577-652, 660-672, 748-752, 816-881.

JOHN PAUL JONES, WHO HELPED WIN INDE-PENDENCE BY FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA

97. A Scotch boy comes to Virginia. In 1747, in far-away "bonnie" Scotland, on the arm of the sea called Solway Firth was born a boy who was to grow up to be a great sailor. John Paul played along the seashore, saw tall ships, and heard wonderful stories of a new land called America, whose ships filled with tobacco came into the firth.

John Paul did not get much schooling, and at the age of



JOHN PAUL JONES
From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale
in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

thirteen he went as a sailor lad on the ship "Friendship" to America. The ship sailed into Chesapeake Bay and up the Rappahannock River to the town of Fredericksburg, Virginia, where John Paul's brother William lived on a plantation. In this town where George Washington had been to school, John Paul also went to school, studied hard to make up for lost time, and left a great name among the boys.

He loved the sea and

made many voyages. After some years he came back to Virginia. While living there he watched the quarrel

between England and her American colonies and saw it finally break out in open war.

98. John Paul enters the American navy. He hastened to Philadelphia and offered his services to Congress. He knew that England would send thousands of soldiers to America; and that she would send warships along our seacoasts and up and down our bays and rivers, to capture and burn our towns. This, the first to float above an American man-of-war, was raised by John Paul Jones



did not own a single warship when the war began.

Congress ordered warships to be built. While these were being made, trading vessels were fitted with cannon and sent out to capture British ships.

When John Paul went to Philadelphia he gave his name as Paul Jones, probably in honor of Willie Jones, a friend who lived in North Carolina.

Although Paul Jones really knew more about warships than most of the men in Philadelphia, Congress gave him a very low office. But that made no difference with him, for he really wanted to get into a sea fight. 1775 he was made a lieutenant, and joined an expedition to capture cannon and powder from the British in the West Indies. He did so well that Congress made him captain and gave him a ship. He then went on a cruise to the West Indies, and in six weeks had captured sixteen prizes and destroyed a number of small vessels.

Congress afterward gave Paul Jones command of the ship "Ranger," and sent him to carry letters to Benjamin



MARINE CANDLESTICK
From man-of-war
"Constitution"

Franklin, who was in France trying to get the king to take sides with the Americans.

Franklin planned for him to take the "Ranger" to the coast of England, and show that American as well as English ships could burn, destroy, and fight. He captured two vessels, made straight for his old town of Whitehaven, "spiked" the cannon in the fort, set some ships on fire, and escaped without harm.

Near this place, his sailors took all the silver from the home of a rich lady.

This robbery troubled him so much that afterward, at great expense to himself, he returned the silver to its owner.

"Look out for Paul Jones, the pirate!" the people said; and the "Drake," carrying two more cannon than the "Ranger," was sent to capture her. Five boat loads

of people went to see the pirate captured. The fight lasted more than an hour. When the "Drake" surrendered, her captain and forty-two men had been killed. The "Ranger" had lost only two men. After this fight the English towns were still more afraid of Paul Jones. There was great joy in France when he sailed into port. The king, who was



NAVAL PITCHER
This was made in commemoration of the
American Navy, 1795

now making war on England, promised him a larger fleet of war vessels. So, in the year 1779, he found himself

captain of a large ship armed with fifty cannon. He called the ship the "Bon Homme Richard" in honor of

Franklin's Almanac, the "Poor Richard." Three smaller vessels joined him, and he again set sail for the English coast. The news of his coming caused great alarm.



Because of this victory three nations, France, Russia, and Denmark, bestowed special honors upon John Paul Jones as "the valiant assettor of the freedom of the sea"

99. A great sea

fight and a great victory. As Paul Jones sailed along the British coasts he captured many trading ships and frightened the people. At last he came upon two British warships. Just at dark the "Richard" attacked the larger English ship, the "Serapis." At the first fire two of Jones's cannon burst, tearing up the deck and killing a dozen of his own men.

The fight went on for an hour, when the "Serapis" came near, and Jones ran the "Richard" into her. "Have you struck your colors?" called out the English captain. "I have not yet begun to fight!" replied Captain Jones. When the ships came together again Paul Jones himself seized a great rope and tied them together. Now the fighting was terrific. The cannon tore huge holes in the sides of the ships.

A great explosion on the "Serapis" killed twenty of her men. Both ships were on fire, and the "Richard" began to fill with water. The men on each ship had to fight fire. It was ten o'clock at night. 'The British prisoners on the "Richard" had to help pump out water to keep the ship from sinking.

Only a few cannon on each ship could be fired. The decks of both ships were covered with dead and wounded, but neither captain would give up. Finally Paul Jones, with his own hands, pointed two cannon at the great mast of the "Serapis." Just as it was about to fall, the English captain surrendered.

All night Jones and his men were kept busy fighting fire and pumping water, while the wounded were removed to the "Serapis."

The "Bon Homme Richard" sank the next day at ten o'clock. Paul Jones sailed to France with his two English ships, where he was praised and rewarded by the king of France. He was a great hero in the eyes of the French people, and in the eyes of the Americans, too.

After the war Paul Jones was an officer in the Russian navy. He died in France in 1792. His grave was forgotten for many years, but was discovered in 1905, and his bones were brought to America with great honor, and buried at Annapolis, Maryland.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. John Paul was born in Scotland, became a sailor and went to America. 2. He was in America when war broke out, offered his services, and was made lieutenant. 3. Congress sent him to France, and Franklin sent him to prey on English commerce. 4. Paul Jones won the great sea fight in the "Bon Homme Richard."

Study Questions. 1. Give an account of John Paul's boyhood. 2. What of his first visit to America? 3. Why did he hasten to Congress as soon as war began? 4. How did

Paul Jones prove his right to be captain? 5. Tell the story of the battle between the "Drake" and the "Ranger." 6. Picture the battle between the "Bon Homme Richard" and the "Serapis." 7. What rewards came to Paul Jones? 8. Where is he buried?

Suggested Readings. Paul Jones: Beebe, Four American Naval Heroes, 17–68; Abbot, Blue Jackets of '76, 83–154; Frothingham, Sea Fighters, 226–266; Hart, Camps and Firesides of the American Revolution, 285–289; Hart, How Our Grandfathers Lived, 217–219; Seawell, Paul Jones.

A FRENCHMAN WHO CAME OVER THE SEA TO HELP WASHINGTON WIN INDEPENDENCE

MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE

100. Lafayette helps Washington win victory. The most famous of the men who came from Europe to fight in the army of Washington was Lafayette. He was a young French nobleman, and had inherited great riches.

When he heard of the Battle of Lexington, and how the American farmers had beaten the king's regulars, he made up his mind to go to help them. In order to do this Lafayette fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and with eleven other officers, including De Kalb, set sail for America.

Congress made Lafayette a general in the Continental army, and the next day he was presented to General Washington. Very soon he was in the Battle of Brandywine, where he was wounded while trying to rally his troops.

After he got well, Washington put him in command of a part of his army at Valley Forge. He took part in

several battles with the British, the most important one being that of Monmouth. Lafayette now went to Rhode



JEAN PAUL LAFAYETTE
From a painting by Samuel F. B. Morse in
the Mayor's Room, New York City Hall

Island to help the patriots in that section. For his work there Congress gave him a vote of thanks.

In 1779, he was welcomed home by his family. Through his influence France sent Rochambeau over with six thousand troops to help the Americans.

On Lafayette's return to America, Washington sent him to Virginia to face Lord Cornwallis, who had just come from North Carolina.

After receiving more soldiers Lafayette followed Cornwallis to Yorktown. Here, we remember, Washington with Lafayette's aid caught Cornwallis in his "mouse trap."

France, the people of that country rose and overthrew their king. Lafayette was made commander in chief of the National Guard. The king and queen were placed under his protection. He promised the people that the king and queen would not run away. They did try to, but were caught and brought back. Lafayette was blamed for this, and for a time he was unjustly kept in prison.

Washington wrote letters asking that Marquis de Lafayette be sent to the United States. Many others wrote in his behalf, but the ruler of Austria was hardhearted and would not let him go. It was not until many years afterward that the great Napoleon made peace with Austria and set Lafayette free.

In 1824 he came to the United States upon invitation from President Monroe, and in the White House celebrated his sixty-sixth birthday with great ceremony. He made visits to every state in the Union, being welcomed in the new states as well as in the old. He visited all the Revolutionary battlefields, and wept over the grave of Washington at Mount Vernon, and over that of his own brave countryman, De Kalb, at Camden, South Carolina.

Before Lafayette went home Congress voted him two hundred thousand dollars and twenty-four thousand acres



LAFAYETTE AT MOUNT VERNON
After a painting by Rossiter and Mignot

of land. He returned to France bearing the gratitude and love of every American.

He died in 1834, mourned by many people. He left a son named after George Washington, and two daugh-



LAFAYETTE AT THE TOMB OF WASHINGTON

ters also, one of whom was called Virginia. A monument to Lafayette, given by the school children of America, was placed in a beautiful park of Paris at the time of the great French Exposition.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The Battle of Lexington aroused Lafayette and others to come to America. 2. Lafayette was wounded at the Battle of Brandywine, went to Rhode Island to help the patriots there, and returned home to influence the king of France to send Rochambeau to America. 3. Lafayette prepared the way for the capture of Cornwallis. 4. Lafayette took part in the French Revolution, returned to America in 1824, and received many tokens of affection.

Study Questions. 1. Who came with Lafayette to help the Americans? 2. In what battles did Lafayette fight before the Cornwallis campaign? 3. Where was he sent after his return from France? 4. What happened after his return to France? 5. How old was Lafayette when he came for his last visit, and what men were dead whom he loved? 6. How many states did he visit? 7. Whose graves did he visit? 8. How did Congress manifest its love for Lafayette?

Suggested Readings. LAFAYETTE: Glascock, Stories of Columbia, 114–126; Blaisdell and Ball, Hero Stories from American History, 199–216; Brooks, True Story of Lafayette.

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES

DANIEL BOONE, THE HUNTER AND PIONEER OF KENTUCKY

102. A famous frontier hero. Daniel Boone was born in Pennsylvania in 1735. He was only three years younger than Washington. While yet a boy he loved the woods, and often spent days deep in the forest with no companion but his rifle and dog.

Boone's parents moved to North Carolina and settled

on the Yadkin River. There he married at the early age of twenty, and, pioneer-like, moved farther into the forest, where people were scarcer and game more plentiful. He built a log cabin for his bride, and made a "clearing" for raising corn and vegetables. But his trusty rifle furnished their table with various kinds of wild meat, such as bear, deer, squirrel, and turkey.



In 1760, Boone, with a friend, crossed the mountains to the Watauga in east Tennessee, on a hunting expedition, where he killed a bear and cut the date of the event on a tree, which still stands on Boone's Creek in Tennessee.

One of Boone's hunter friends came back from a journey across the Cumberland Mountains and told of the beauty of the land beyond. Boone was eager to go. Too many people were settling near him.

grass. So with five companions he set out. Over mountains they went, across rivers, through deep forests. Finally they reached the beautiful land of Kentucky. They built a log camp and spent several months enjoying the wild life so dear to the hunter.

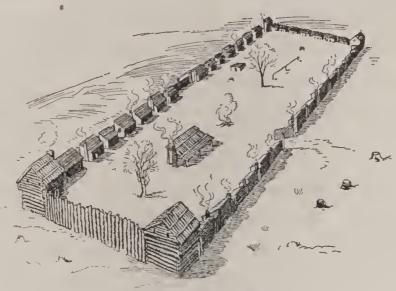
But danger from the Indians was present every moment. Day and night, sleeping in their camp or tramping through the woods, the hunters had to be ready for the death grapple. One day Boone and a companion named Stewart were off their guard. The Indians rushed upon them and captured them.

Boone and his companion understood the ways of the Indians and won their confidence. One night, as the savages slept around the camp fire, Boone arose and quietly awoke Stewart. They stole silently from the camp and hastened away.

Other hardy pioneers heard of the fine lands and planned to go there. Richard Henderson, a rich planter, claimed a great tract of land in Kentucky, and put Boone at the head of thirty men to cut and blaze a road from the Holston River over the mountains, through Cumberland Gap to the Kentucky River. The result was the famous "Wilderness Road," the first road across the mountains, over which hundreds of pack horses and thousands of settlers made their way.

When the road was finished to the banks of the Kentucky River, Daniel Boone built Fort Boonesboro.

The fort was about two hundred and sixty feet long, and one hundred and fifty feet wide. At each corner of it stood a two-story blockhouse, with loopholes through which the settlers could shoot at Indians.



FORT BOONESBORO IN WINTER

After the plan by Colonel Henderson in Collins'
"Historical Collections of Kentucky"

Cabins with loopholes were built along the sides of the fort. Between the cabins a high fence was made by sinking log posts into the ground. Two heavy gates were built on opposite sides of the fort. Every night the horses and cattle were driven inside the fort.

104. Boone takes his family to Kentucky. When the fort was finished Boone brought his family, and several others, over the mountains to his "second Paradise." Other settlers came and Boonesboro began to grow. Some of the bolder settlers built cabins outside of the fort, where they cut away and burned the trees to raise corn and vegetables.

To the Indian all this seemed to threaten his hunting ground. The red men were anxious, therefore, to kill and scalp these pioneers. One day, Boone's daughter and two girl friends were out late in a boat near the shore opposite the fort when the Indians suddenly seized the girls and hastened away with them. The people heard their

screams for help, but too late to risk crossing the river to save them.

What sorrow in the fort that night! Had the Indians scalped the girls, or were they hastening to cross the Ohio with them? The next day Boone with eight men seized their guns, found the Indian trail, and marched with all speed. What if the Indians should see the white men first! On the second day Boone's party came upon the Indians building a fire, and fired before they were seen. Two of the Indians fell, and the others ran away, leaving the girls behind, unharmed, but badly frightened.

105. Escapes from Indians. The War of the Revolution was already raging east of the mountains, and the Indians were taking the side of the British.

While making salt at the "Blue Licks," Boone and twenty-seven of his men were captured by the Indians



BOONE AND HIS MEN TRAILING THE INDIANS

and marched all the way to Detroit, the headquarters of the British army in the Northwest. The British offered the Indians five hundred dollars for Boone, but the savages were too proud of their great pris-

oner to sell him, and marched him back to their towns in what is now Ohio.

Here he was adopted by an Indian chief. They plucked out all of Boone's hair except a "scalp lock," which they ornamented with feathers. They painted and dressed him like an Indian. His new parents were quite proud of their son. Sometimes he went hunting alone, but the Indians counted his bullets and measured his powder. But Boone was too shrewd for them. He cut the bullets in two, and used half charges of powder.

One day he saw four hundred and fifty painted warriors getting ready to march against Boonesboro. He went hunting that day, but he did not come back. What excitement in that Indian town! Soon the woods were full of Indians hunting for Boone. In five days—with but one meal—he reached Boonesboro.

All hands fell to repairing the fort. The horses, cattle, and provisions were brought inside the fort, and water was brought from the river.

The Indians came, and Boone's "Indian father" called on him to surrender. Boone asked for two days to think about it, but he used this time in getting ready to fight. At the end of the two days Boone told him that his men would fight to the last.

The Indians then proposed that twelve from each side meet to make a treaty of peace. Boone took his strongest men. While parleying, each Indian suddenly seized a white man. The white men broke away, and ran for the fort. Boone's riflemen were ready, and poured a hot fire into the Indians.

The Indians climbed into trees to shoot down into the fort. They tried to set the fort on fire, but failed. They then tried to dig a tunnel under the fort, but that failed also.

After nine days of failure, and after losing many warriors, the Indians gave up the fight and recrossed the



From a portrait made in 1819 when Boone was 85 years old, painted by Chester Harding, and now in possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society, Boston, Massachusetts

Ohio. Although the settlers had to keep a daily watch for Indians, and had to fight them in other parts of Kentucky, the Indians never attacked Boonesboro again.

the Revolutionary War other men came as pioneers into Kentucky, and built forts, and defended their settlements against the Indians. As the settlements grew thicker, game grew scarcer. Boone resolved once more to move farther west. When asked why, he replied: "Too

crowded. I want more elbow room."

At the age of sixty, while Washington was still President, and after he had seen Kentucky become a state, Daniel Boone and his faithful wife made the long journey to the region beyond the Mississippi, into what is now Missouri. He saw this region pass from Spain to France, and from France to the United States (1803). He was still a hunter at eighty-two, and saw Missouri preparing to enter the Union as the twenty-fourth state.

He died in 1820 at the age of eighty-six. Years afterward, remembering the noble deeds of the famous pioneer, Kentucky brought his body to the capital city and buried it_there with great honors.

JOHN SEVIER, "NOLICHUCKY JACK"

107. A famous Indian fighter. John Sevier was born in the Shenandoah Valley, Virginia, in 1745. His mother taught him to read, but he obtained most of his schooling in George Washington's old school town, Fredericksburg. He quit school at sixteen. He built a fort-like storehouse on the Shenandoah and called it Newmarket. He lived there, selling goods and fighting Indians, until, at the early age of twenty-six, he was a wealthy man. He had already made such a name as an Indian fighter that the governor made him captain in the militia of which George Washington was then colonel.

Sevier was a fine-looking man. He was tall, slender,

erect, graceful in action, fair skinned, blue eyed, and had pleasing manners, which had come to him from his French parents. He charmed everybody who met him, from backwoodsmen up to the king's governor at Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia.

A most promising future opened before him in Virginia. But hearing of a band of pioneers on the Watauga, he rode over one day to



JOHN SEVIER

After an engraving from a miniature now in possession of one of his descendants at New York

see them and resolved to cast his lot with them and settle down at Watauga.

During the Revolutionary War, British agents went among the Cherokee Indians and gave them guns and



KATE SHERRILL RACING FOR LIFE

a m m u n i t i o n. Indian-like, they planned to take Fort Watauga by surprise. They came creeping up to the fort one morning just at daybreak. Forty deadly rifles suddenly blazed from

portholes and drove them back to the woods. During the siege of three weeks, food grew scarce at the fort, and the men grew tired of being cooped up so long. Some of them ventured out and were shot or had very narrow escapes from death.

The story is told that Sevier, during the siege, fell in love with the beautiful, tall, brown-haired Kate Sherrill. One day she ventured out of the fort. It was a daring act, for four men had lost their lives in that way. The Indians tried to catch the girl, for they did not want to kill her. But she could run like a deer, and almost flew to the fort. Sevier was watching and shot the Indian nearest her. The gate was closed but she jumped with all her might, seized the top of the stockade, drew herself up, and sprang into the arms of Sevier. Not long after she became his wife.

In 1778, Sevier heard that the Indians were coming again. He quickly called his men together, took boats, and paddled rapidly down the Tennessee to the Indian

towns. He burned the towns, captured their store of hides, and marched home on foot. How surprised the Indians were when they returned!

108. Nolichucky Jack. The Watauga settlement was growing in numbers, and Sevier went to live on the Nolichucky, a branch of the French Broad River. There he built a large log house, or rather two houses, and joined them by a covered porch. Outside were large porches, while inside were great stone fireplaces.

Here Sevier gave hearty welcome to friend and stranger, no matter how poor, if they were honest. The settlers far and wide, and new settlers from over the mountains, partook of his cider, hominy, corn bread, and of wild meat of many kinds. Sometimes he invited them with their families to a barbecue. Whether people came for advice or to call him to arms against the Indians, no one was turned away. "Nolichucky Jack," as his neighbors loved to call him, held a warm place in every settler's heart.

then victorious in South Carolina, sent Colonel Ferguson with one thousand British soldiers into western North Carolina to punish the backwoodsmen. Ferguson grew bold, and sent word across the mountains, threatening to punish Sevier and his riflemen. This threat was enough. Colonel Shelby of Kentucky and Sevier resolved to rouse the frontiersmen, cross the mountains, and teach Colonel Ferguson a lesson. Colonel Campbell with his men from the Holston in Virginia, joined them. A thousand well-mounted backwoodsmen, with their long rifles, fringed hunting shirts, and coonskin caps, began the march from the Watauga across the mountains. Once across they were joined by several hundred Carolinians. Ferguson

retreated to Kings Mountain, too steep on one side to be climbed. He felt safe behind his thousand gleaming bayonets.

The backwoodsmen picked nine hundred men to make the charge up the mountain in face of the bayonets, although among themselves there was not a bayonet. Three divisions, one for each side of the mountain, marched up: Down the mountain side came the flashing bayonets. The backwoodsmen in the center retreated from tree to tree, firing steadily all the time. The British, now shot at from both sides as well as in front, turned and charged at one side. Then one division fired into their backs



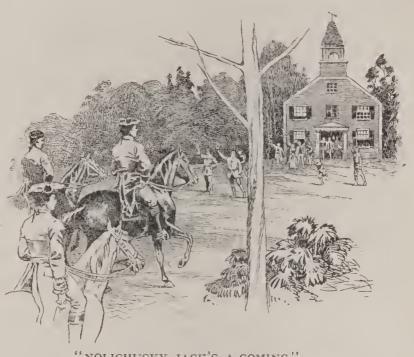
THE BATTLE OF KINGS MOUNTAIN

Where 900 frontiersmen attacked and totally destroyed 1,000 British soldiers entrenched and better armed

and the other on their side. What could bayonets do in the midst of trees?

The frontiersmen kept to trees, and their rifles seldom missed their aim. The British retreated to the top of the

mountain. Colonel Ferguson was killed and his entire army was killed or captured. This victory caused great rejoicing among the Americans and prepared the way for the work of Generals Greene and Morgan.



Sevier welcomed by the congregation of the country church

Sevier and Campbell hastened back over the mountains, for the Indians were scalping and burning again. With seven hundred riflemen, they marched against the Indian towns and burned a thousand cabins and fifty thousand bushels of corn. This was a hard blow, but the Indians kept fighting several years longer.

Sevier, in all, fought thirty-five battles. He was the most famous Indian fighter of his time.

110. A much-loved hero. When Tennessee became a state the people elected Sevier governor. They reëlected him until he had held the office for twelve years. people of Tennessee almost worshiped the bold pioneer. He had spent all his time and all his wealth in their service. And while he was governor, and living in Knoxville, the early capital, one or more of his old riflemen were always living at his old home. Even the Indian

chiefs often came to visit him. When the people of Tennessee were debating questions of great importance they always asked: "What says the good old governor?"

Sevier died in 1815, while acting as an officer in marking the boundary line between Georgia and the Indian lands. Only a few soldiers and Indians were present. For generations the children of the pioneers went on repeating to their children the story of the courage and goodness of "Nolichucky Jack." His name is yet a household word among the people of eastern Tennessee. Their children are taught the story of his life. In the courthouse yard at Knoxville stands a monument erected to his memory.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, THE HERO OF VINCENNES

Rogers Clark was born in Virginia in 1752. From child-hood Clark liked to roam the woods. He became a surveyor and an Indian fighter at the age of twenty-one. Like Washington, with chain and compass, and with axe and rifle, he made his way far into the wild and lonely forests of the upper Ohio.

Clark was a scout for the governor of Virginia in the expedition which defeated Cornstalk, the great Indian chief of the Shawnees, at the mouth of the Kanawha.

Two years later Clark made his way alone over the mountains and became a leader in Kentucky, along with Boone. The Kentucky hunters chose him to go to Virginia as their lawmaker.

He told Governor Patrick Henry that if Kentucky was not worth defending against the Indians, it was not worth having. At this the Virginia lawmakers made

Kentucky into a Virginia county and gave Clark five hundred pounds of powder which he carried down the

Ohio River to Kentucky.

He lived at Harrodsburg where, for more than a year, he was kept busy helping the settlers fight off the Indians. This was the very time when Boonesboro and other settlements



INDIANS ATTACKING A FORT

Again and again, when a surprise was not possible, the
Indians from safe hiding places picked off the
men in a garrison

were so often surrounded by Indians who had been aroused by the British officers at Detroit. These officers paid a certain sum for each scalp the Indians brought them.

seen brave men and women scalped by the Indians, Clark decided to strike a blow at the British across the Ohio. But where could he find money and men for an army? Kentucky did not have men enough. Clark thought of that noble patriot across the mountains, Patrick Henry. He mounted his horse and guided some settlers back to Virginia, but kept his secret. In Virginia he heard the good news that Burgoyne had surrendered.

Governor Henry was heart and soul for Clark's plan. He made Clark a colonel, gave him six thousand dollars and ordered him to raise an army to defend Kentucky. In May, 1778, Clark's little army of about one hundred and fifty men with several families took their flatboats and floated down the Monongahela to Fort Pitt. Clark did not dare tell the riflemen where they were going, for fear the British might get the word. Here they took on supplies and a few small cannon.

On they floated in the middle of the river to keep away from the Indians who might be hiding in the dark forests on the river banks. At the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, Clark landed his party. He built a block-house and cabins, and drilled the riflemen into soldiers while the settlers planted corn. This was the beginning of the city of Louisville.

rig. Captures Kaskaskia. One day Clark called his men together and told them the secret—he was really leading them against the British forts on the Illinois and the Wabash rivers.

A few of the men refused to go so far from home—a thousand miles—but the rest were willing to follow their leader.

In June, Clark's boats "shot the falls" and were soon at the mouth of the Tennessee, where a band of hunters joined the party. There Clark hid the boats and began the long march through tangled forests and over grand prairies. They did not know what minute the Indians might attack, or some British scout discover them and carry the news to General Hamilton at Detroit.

They reached the old French town of Kaskaskia at dusk on July 4. They did not dare give a shout or fire a gun, for the British officer had more men than Clark.

Clark sent part of his men silently to surround the town, while he led the others to the fort, where they heard

the merry music of the violin and the voices of the dancers.

Clark himself slipped into the great hall, folded his arms, and looked in silence on the dimly lighted scene. An Indian lying on the floor saw Clark's face by the light of the torches. He sprang to his feet, and gave the terrible war whoop. Instantly the dancing ceased, the women screamed, and the men rushed toward Clark. But Clark simply said: "Go on with your dance, but remember that you dance under Virginia and not under Great Britain!" The British general surrendered, and the French inhabitants trembled when they learned that the backwoodsmen had captured the town. They sent their priest, Father Gibault, and other chief men to beg



CLARE'S SURPRISE AT KASKASKIA

for their lives. Imagine their surprise and joy when Clark told them that not only were their lives safe, but that the new republic made war on no church, and protected all from insult.



GEORGE ROGERS CLARK

From a painting on wood by John Wesley
Jarvis, now in the State Library at
Richmond, Virginia

He also told them that the king of France had made a treaty with the United States and was sending his great warships and soldiers to help America. The town of Cahokia also surrendered.

Vincennes, and its results. Father Gibault went to Vincennes to tell the French settlers about the doings of Clark and to give them the news that France had taken sides with the Americans.

The people rejoiced and ran up the American flag. Clark sent Captain Helm to command the fort.

General Hamilton at Detroit was busy planning to attack Fort Pitt and to encourage the Ohio Indians to kill and scalp Kentuckians.

How astonished he was when he heard that the forts on the Illinois and the Wabash had fallen! He gathered a mixed army of British, Canadians, and Indians, crossed Lake Erie to the mouth of the Maumee, and "poled" and paddled up that river to the portage. Down the Wabash they floated, five hundred strong. Vincennes surrendered without a blow. Hamilton decided to stay there for the winter and march against Clark in the

spring. This was a blunder. He did not yet know Clark and his backwoodsmen.

"I must take Hamilton or Hamilton will take me," said Clark, when he heard the news. He immediately set to work to build a rude sort of gunboat, which he fitted out with his cannon and about forty men. He sent the "Willing," as it was called, down the Mississippi, around into the Ohio, and up the Wabash to meet him at Vincennes.

All was excitement in the French towns. Forty or fifty French settlers joined Clark's backwoods riflemen. Father Gibault gave them his blessing and the march overland to Vincennes began.

Clark divided his men into parties. Each, in its turn,



CLARK'S MEN ON THEIR WAY THROUGH THE DROWNED LANDS OF THE WABASH VALLEY

did the hunting, and at night invited the others to sit around great camp fires and feast on "bear ham, buffalo hump, elk saddle, and venison haunch." They ate, sang, danced, and told stories. No doubt they often talked



THE BIG TROOPER CARRIED THE DRUMMER BOY

of their loved ones far away in Virginia and Kentucky.

On they pushed until they came to the "drowned lands of the Wabash," and there they saw miles and miles of muddy water. They made a rude boat to carry them over the deepest parts. The horses had to swim.

Sometimes, after wading all day, they could hardly find a dry spot to camp for the night. Some grew too weak to wade and were carried in boats. The stronger sang songs to keep up the courage of the weak. When they finally

reached the opposite shore of the Wabash many fell, worn out—some lying partly in the water.

Those who were well built fires and warmed and fed the faint ones on hot deer broth. But these brave men soon forgot their hardships and again were full of fight.

Clark sent a letter to the people of Vincennes telling them he was about to attack the town. He advised all friends of America to remain quietly in their homes, and asked all friends of the British to go to the fort and join the "hair-buyer," as the backwoodsmen called Hamilton.

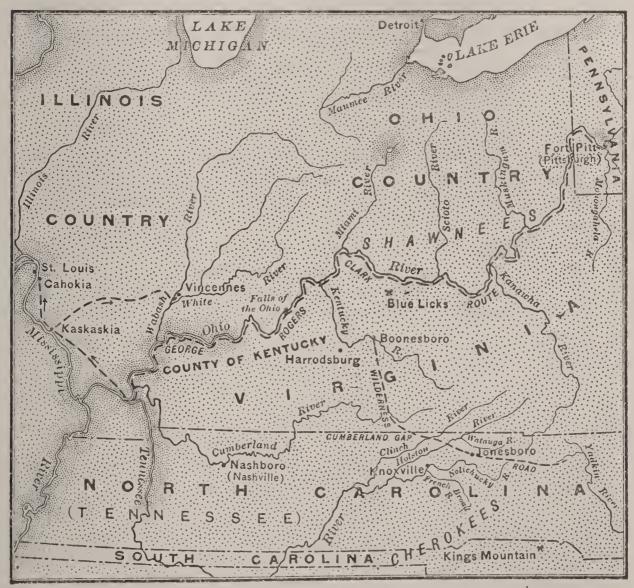
At dark, Clark's men charged into the town and attacked the fort. The fight went on all night. As

soon as it was daylight the backwoodsmen fired through the portholes and drove the gunners from the cannon.

Clark's men begged to storm the fort. Only one American had been wounded, but several British soldiers had been killed and others wounded. In the afternoon Hamilton surrendered and once more the Stars and Stripes floated over "old Vincennes."

The "Willing" appeared in a few days. Her men were disappointed because they were too late to take part.

Clark put men in the forts at Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes, and made peace with the Indians round



EXPEDITIONS TO THE WEST AND THE SCENE OF GEORGE ROGERS CLARK'S CAMPAIGN

them. But he was never able to march against Detroit, as once he had planned to do.

Virginia rewarded the brave men who had followed Clark by giving to each three hundred acres of land in southern Indiana. The land was surveyed, and is known today as "Clark's Giant."

Clark and his men had performed one of the greatest deeds of the Revolutionary War. They made it possible for the United States to have the Mississippi River for her western boundary, when England acknowledged our independence.

George Rogers Clark was never properly rewarded. He spent his last days in poverty at the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, and died in 1818. In 1895 a monument was erected in his memory in Indianapolis, Indiana.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts 1. Boone loved the woods, crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, and later went to Kentucky. 2. He was captured by the Indians, but finally escaped.

3. Boone built the "Wilderness Road" and Fort Boonesboro.

4. Boone took part in the War of the Revolution, was captured by the Indians, carried to Detroit, but escaped.

5. John Sevier studied at Fredericksburg; fought Indians in the Shenandoah. 6. He went to Watauga; defended it against the Indians. 7. Sevier helped to win the victory at Kings Mountain. 8. He was many times governor of Tennessee.

g. George Rogers Clark loved the woods; was a surveyor and an Indian fighter at twenty-one. 10. Moved to Kentucky, saw men and women scalped, and resolved to capture the British posts north of the Ohio. 11. Clark received permission from Patrick Henry, collected his little army, and floated down the Ohio to the falls. 12. He drilled his men and set out for Kaskaskia, which he captured. 13. Clark marched for Vincennes through the drowned lands, captured Vincennes. 14. Clark was not rewarded by the government, but the state of Indiana has erected a great monument to his memory.

Study Questions. 1. What did Boone do that was pioneerlike? 2. What was the country doing in 1760? 3. Tell the story of Boone's first visit to Kentucky. 4. Picture the capture and escape of Boone and Stewart. 5. Find the places on the map which are named on Boone's Wilderness Road. 6. Tell the story of the capture and rescue of the girls. 7. Be captured and tell of the long journey to Detroit, what you saw there, and how and why Boone made his escape. 8. Tell of the last attack on Boonesboro. q. Why did Boone move to Missouri?

10. What famous men went to school at Fredericksburg? II. What famous men have lived in the Shenandoah? 12. What changed Sevier's career? 13. What happened to Sevier at the siege of Fort Watauga. 14. Why did Sevier leave Watauga, and what sort of life did he lead on the Nolichucky? 15. Picture the Battle of Kings Mountain. 16. Why did

the people of Tennessee love Sevier?

17. Tell of Clark's boyhood. 18. When was he a scout? a leader in Kentucky? 19. What made Clark learn to hate the British? 20. Tell the story of his secret. 21. Picture the voyage to the falls of the Ohio. 22. Tell the events from the falls of the Ohio until he reached Kaskaskia. 23. Picture the scene of the dance at Kaskaskia. 24. What news did Clark give Father Gibault? 25. Where were the British, and what did they do? 26. Picture Clark's march to Vincennes. 27. Tell the story of the attack on Vincennes. 28. Where was "Clark's Grant"? 29. Why is Clark's conquest of Kakaskia and Vincennes one of the greatest events in American history? 30. Find on the map the places mentioned in the campaign.

Suggested Readings. Daniel Boone: Wright, Children's Stories of American Progress, 1–40; Glascock, Stories of Columbia, 138–147; Hart, Camps and Firesides of the Revolution, 101-116; McMurry, Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley, 68 - 83.

JOHN SEVIER: Blaisdell and Ball, Hero Stories from American History, 90-104; McMurry, Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley,

George Rogers Clark: McMurry, Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley, 124–149; Blaisdell and Ball, Hero Stories from American History, 1-17; Eggleston, Tecumseh and the Shawnee Prophet, 41-51; Roosevelt, The Winning of the West, II, 31-85.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC

ELI WHITNEY, WHO INVENTED THE COTTON GIN AND CHANGED THE HISTORY OF THE SOUTH

115. What a boy's love of tools led to. Before the Revolution there lived in a Massachusetts village a boy named Eli Whitney. His father had a farm, on which there was also a tool shop. This was the most wonderful place in the world to young Eli. Whenever he had a moment to spare, he was sure to be working away in his father's shop. At the age of twelve he made a good fiddle. After that people with broken fiddles came to him to have them mended. One day, while his father was in church, Eli got Mr. Whitney's fine watch and took it all apart. Other boys often try the same thing. But Eli succeeded in putting it together again, and it ran as smoothly as before. During the war he earned money making nails. At college he helped pay his expenses by mending things and doing a carpenter's work.

If Eli Whitney were living today he would surely have been an engineer. But there were no engineers in those days, and so' he decided to teach school. He found a position in far-off Georgia, and took passage on a ship to Savannah. On board ship he met the widow of the old war hero, General Nathanael Greene, to whom the people of Virginia had given a fine home as a reward for his services in the Revolution. Mrs. Greene liked the young man for his friendly nature and his intelligence. He had a pleasant voyage, but sad was his disappointment, when he arrived at Savannah! The people who had asked him to come had changed their minds, and he was left without a school.

He was in a strange place, without money, and did not know what to do. Just then came an invitation from

Mulberry Grove, where Mrs. Greene lived. He went gladly and was treated very kindly. He made many new friends. The men liked the interest he took in their plantations and their work.



ELI WHITNEY WORKING ON HIS COTTON GIN

The children were his friends because he made for them wonderful toys of all sorts.

One day some visitors were talking with Mrs. Greene about cotton. This plant was little grown at that time. People knew that it had a fine, soft fiber which could be made into excellent cloth. But the fiber had to be separated from the seed before it could be spun. In those days the seeds were taken out by hand, and even a skillful slave could clean only about a pound a day. Think of working a whole day for a handful of cotton! Because of this difficulty, cotton was expensive, more so than wool or linen. Only well-to-do people could wear cotton clothes.

rife. The cotton gin invented. One of the visitors said that a machine ought to be invented which would clean the cotton. Mrs. Greene thought of Whitney. She believed he could make such a machine, and asked him to try. He thought about it, and believed he could make iron fingers do the work that the fingers of the slaves had done.

Whitney got a basketful of cotton and fixed up a shop. Then he went to work patiently. He had a good deal of trouble, but he kept on. One day he called in Mrs. Greene and her overseer and proudly showed them his little machine, made of rollers and wires and brushes. Into this he poured the cotton just as it came from the field. When he turned a crank the soft, clean cotton came tumbling out of one side and the seeds out of another. This was the cotton gin, which in a few years was to change the entire life of the South.

THOMAS JEFFERSON WHO WROTE THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, FOUNDED THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY,

AND PURCHASED THE LOUISIANA TERRITORY

Declaration of Independence was born in 1743, near Charlottesville, Virginia. Like many other Virginia boys, Thomas Jefferson lived on a large plantation, and spent much time in hunting, fishing, and horseback riding. While yet a boy, and throughout his long life, Jefferson loved books, and studied hard every subject that came to his attention.

At seventeen he rode away to Williamsburg to attend the College of William and Mary, the second oldest college in America.

Although Williamsburg was the capital of the largest and oldest of all the colonies, it had scarcely more than two hundred houses, and not more than a thousand people, and but one main street. The capitol stood at one end of the street and the college at the other. It was the first town Jefferson had ever seen and was wonderful in his eyes.

At the opening of the House of Burgesses, Jefferson saw the best people in the Old Colony come pouring in. The planters came in fine coaches drawn by beautiful horses. Their wives and daughters came to attend the governor's reception, and to enjoy meeting old friends.

Jefferson became acquainted with the great men of his colony, and with many young men who were to be the future leaders in America. Here he met Patrick Henry, a student in a law office. Jefferson liked the fun-making Henry, and the two young men enjoyed many happy hours together, playing their violins.

After his graduation Jefferson remained in his old college town to study law in the office of one of Virginia's ablest lawyers. Henry often stayed in Jefferson's rooms

when he came to attend the meetings of the Burgesses. When Henry made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act, Jefferson stood in the doorway of the House and listened spell-bound to his friend's fiery eloquence.

118. Enters public life. In a few years Jefferson himself was honored



WHERE JEFFERSON WENT TO SCHOOL BEFORE HE WENT TO WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE

with a seat in the House of Burgesses. He immediately took a leading part in opposing the tax on tca. The

king's governor became angry and sent the members of the House of Burgesses home. But before they went, the



THE OLD CAPITOL, WILLIAMSBURG

Here Jefferson heard Patrick Henry make his famous

Cæsar-Charles the First speech

bolder ones met and signed a paper which pledged the people of Virginia to buy no more goods from England.

The next important events in Jefferson's life were his falling

in love, and his marriage to a young widow. She was beautiful in looks, winning in her manner, and rich in lands and slaves. Jefferson took his young wife to a handsome mansion which he had built on his great plantation. He called the home Monticello. Here these two Virginians, like Washington and his wife at Mount Vernon, spent many happy days.

But stirring events took Jefferson away from the

quiet life at Monticello. After his marriage, he went to the meeting of the Burgesses, and there with other leaders formed a Committee of Corres-



THE RALEIGH TAVERN, WILLIAMSBURG
When barred from the House of Burgesses the Committee of
Correspondence met in this tavern

pondence. This committee wrote to the other colonies to get news of what the leaders were doing, and to tell them

what the men in Virginia were planning to do. Each of the other colonies appointed committees of correspondence. They kept the news going back and forth as fast as rapid horsemen could carry it. These committees had a strong influence in uniting the colonies against England.

119. Writes the Declaration of Independence. In 1775 the Burgesses chose Thomas Jefferson, Richard

Henry Lee, and Benjamin Harrison as delegates to the Continental Congress at Philadelphia. In this Congress Richard Henry Lee made a motion declaring that the Thirteen Colonies were free and independent of Great Britain.

The Congress appointed Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, John Adams of



JEFFERSON AND HIS WIFE AT MONTICELLO

Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston of New York to draw up a Declaration of Independence.

When these great men met to talk over the Declaration, the others urged Jefferson to do the writing, for he was able to put his thoughts on paper in plain, strong words. How important that the Declaration should be well written, and should contain powerful reasons for breaking

away from England and setting up an independent government! A large number of people in America were opposed to separating from England. Besides, good reasons must be given to those brave Englishmen who, like Pitt and Burke, had been our defenders in Parliament.

When Jefferson showed what he had written, the others liked it so well that only a few words were changed. Even after several days' debate in Congress, only a few more words were changed. Then it was signed by the members of the Congress and sent out for all the world to see why America was driven to fight for independence (1776).

John Hancock, the president of the Congress, was the



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE From the first historical painting of John Trumbull, now in the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington

first to sign the Declaration. He did so in large letters, saying that George III might read his name without

spectacles. He also said: "We must all hang together in this matter." "Yes," replied Franklin, "we must all

hang together, or we shall hang separately."

home and abroad. Jefferson returned to Virginia, and later became governor. After the war was over and England had taken her armies home, Congress



JEFFERSON WELCOMED BACK TO MONTICELLO
BY HIS NEGROES

sent Thomas Jefferson as minister to France (1785). The French people liked Jefferson, because, like Franklin, he was democratic, and treated all men alike. The French people were just beginning to overthrow the power of their king, and plan a republic. Jefferson told them how happy the Americans were since they had broken away from George III.

After five years Jefferson returned home. When his negro slaves heard that he was coming back to Monticello they went several miles to greet him. When the carriage reached home they carried him on their shoulders into the house. The slaves were happy, for Jefferson, like Washington, was a kind master, and hoped for the day to come when slavery would no longer exist.

Washington had just been elected the first president of the United States (1789), and was looking for an adviser on questions relating to foreign nations. He chose Jefferson and gave him the office of Secretary of State.

bated ways of paying the Revolutionary War debt, and also whether America should take sides with France in the great war between that country and England. The people disputed over these and many other questions, until they formed two parties. One, the Democratic-Republican, was led by Thomas Jefferson, and the other, the Federalist party, was led by Alexander Hamilton.

The Democratic-Republican party soon became known simply as the Democrats. In 1800 they elected their great leader, Jefferson, president. He was very popular because he was a friend of the poor as well as of the rich people. He declared that the new national government should in every way be plain and simple, instead of showy, like the governments of Europe.

Presidents Washington and Adams had held fine receptions, where people wore wigs, silver shoe buckles, and fine lace. When Jefferson became president he did away with all this show and style. He also pleased the people by reducing the expenses of the government. He spent just as little money as possible in running it.

Jefferson's most important acts while president was the purchase of Louisiana. In 1800 Napoleon, the great French general, forced Spain to give France all of the region then known as Louisiana. This extended from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, and from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico. Spain, a weak country, had already refused to permit American boats to use the

mouth of the Mississippi. What if Napoleon should send his victorious army and close the Mississippi entirely?

Jefferson saw the danger at once, and sent James Monroe to Paris to help our minister, Robert R. Livingston, buy New Orleans and a strip of land on the east side of the Mississippi River near its mouth.

Napoleon was about to enter on a terrible war with England, and needed money badly. He was only too glad to sell all of Louisiana for fifteen million dollars (1803). This was more than Livingston was told to buy, but he and Monroe accepted it.

If you will count the



THOMAS JEFFERSON From a painting by Rembrandt Peale, now in the possession of the New York Historical Society, New York City

number of great states which have been carved out of the "Louisiana Purchase," and look at the great cities and the many towns which have grown up within "old Louisiana," you will understand why great honor is given to the men who purchased this vast region.

The next year, Jefferson sent an expedition under the command of Meriwether Lewis and William Clark to explore this vast country. With men, Indians, and boats they made their way slowly up the Missouri, across the mountains, and down the Columbia to the Pacific coast.

The wonderful stories told by Lewis and Clark gave Americans their first real knowledge of parts of the Louisiana Purchase and of the Oregon region. In 1904, America, with the help of all the great nations of the world, celebrated at St. Louis the buying of this region by holding the Louisiana Purchase Exposition.

123. Last days of Jefferson. In 1804, Jefferson was elected President again by a greater majority than before. After serving a second term, he, like Washington, refused to be President for a third time. He retired to Monticello, where he spent his last days pleasantly and where hundreds of friends from all parts of America and Europe came to consult him. The people called him the "Sage of Monticello."

Jefferson lived to see the first two states, Louisiana



THE UNITED STATES IN 1803, AFTER THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE

and Missouri, carved out of the Louisiana Purchase. He died at Monticello, July 4, 1826. On the same day,

at Quincy, Massachusetts, died his long-time friend, John Adams. These two patriots, one the writer, the other the defender, of the Declaration of Independence, died just half a century after it was signed.

124. Jefferson believed in education. If the people are to rule wisely, they must be educated. Jefferson believed this with all his heart. For his own state, Virginia, he planned a complete school system. He personally watched over the building of its great university. He was so proud of his work in founding it that he asked his friends to record on his tombstone that he was the "Father of the University of Virginia."

Jefferson's ideas about education have had a great influence both in the South and in the North.

LEWIS AND CLARK, AMERICAN EXPLORERS IN THE - OREGON COUNTRY

of the Louisiana territory by Jefferson opened up a great new region for settlers. It was necessary to know something about this new territory. It stretched from the Mississippi River to the Rockies. The Pacific shore had already been visited by explorers. Boston merchants had sent Captain Robert Gray to the Pacific coast to buy furs from the Indians. He sailed around South America and up along the coast to Vancouver Island, where he obtained a rich cargo of furs. He then made his way across the Pacific to China, and came back to Boston by way of the Cape of Good Hope—the first American to carry the Stars and Stripes around the world.

On a second voyage to the same region, in the good ship "Columbia," Gray discovered the mouth of a great

river (1792). Up this river he went for nearly thirty miles. Captain Gray named the river the Columbia after his vessel. The Indians had called it the Oregon.

126. The Lewis and Clark Expedition. The next important step in finding a route to the Oregon country was the great expedition undertaken while Thomas Jefferson was still president.

Lewis and Clark were two young men chosen by Jefferson to explore the region known as the Louisiana Purchase. They were to make their way across the Rocky Mountains to the Oregon country and to the Pacific. They chose forty-two men to go with them—some as soldiers, others as servants, and still others as hunters. From the little French village of St. Louis they began their journey in boats in the spring of 1804.

Up the Missouri River they slowly made their way against the current of the muddy, rushing stream. At one time it was so swift that they could not force boats against it, and at another time the brushwood that came down the river broke their oars.

Near where the city of Council Bluffs now stands, Lewis and Clark held a great meeting with the Indians. They told the Indians that the people of the United States and not the people of France were now the owners of this great land. Together they smoked the "pipe of peace."

The company spent the winter on an island sixteen hundred miles from St. Louis. The men built rude homes and fortified them. The Indians were friendly, and the explorers spent many evenings around the wigwam fires listening to stories of the country the Indians had to tell them.

In the spring they bade the Indians good-by, passed the mouth of the Yellowstone, and traveled on until the Rocky

Mountains, with their long rows of snow-covered peaks, came into view.

On the thirteenth day of June they saw the wonderful "Falls of the Missouri." The water tore through a vast gorge a dozen miles or more in length.

mountains. On they went until their boats could go no farther. They had reached rough and rugged hills and mountains. They climbed the heights as best they could.



CAPTAIN MERIWETHER LEWIS
From the original painting by Charles
Wilson Peale in Independence Hall,
Philadelphia

From now on the suffering of the party was great indeed. One day Captain Lewis went ahead with three men

to find Indian guides for the party. They climbed higher and higher until finally they came to a place where the Missouri River takes its rise. They went on and at last came to the western slope of the mountains, down which flowed a stream toward the Pacific.

Finally Captain Lewis came upon a company of Indian women who could not get away. They all bowed their heads as if expecting to be killed. They led the white men to a band of Indians who received them with all the signs of kindness they could show.

Now they all turned back to find Clark and his party. When they reached Clark the Indians smoked the "pipe of peace" and Lewis and Clark told the Indians why the

United States had sent them out. They were the first white men these Indians had ever seen.



CAPTAIN WILLIAM CLARK
From the original painting by Charles
Wilson Peale in Independence
Hall, Philadelphia

The mountains were now rough and had neither trees nor grass. The explorers took an old Indian guide and crossed the Bitter Root Mountains into a valley of the same name. They followed an Indian trail over the mountains to the Clearwater River. They suffered a great deal from want of food and from the cold. When they reached a tribe of the Nez Percé (Pierced Nose) Indians they ate so much they all became ill.

boats they had hollowed out of tree trunks, they glided down the Clearwater to the Snake. They camped near the spot where now stands the town of Lewiston, Idaho. Then they embarked on the Snake River and floated down to where it joins the mighty Columbia.

They were again among the Indians who had plenty of dried fish. Here is the home of the salmon, a fish found in astonishing numbers. The men had never seen so many fish before.

The number of Indians increased as they went toward the Pacific. Finally the party of explorers passed through the Cascade Mountains and were once more on the Columbia. They soon beheld the blue waters of the Pacific. During their five months' stay on the Pacific, Captain Clark made a map of the region through which they had gone. They repaired their guns and made clothes of the skins of elk and other game.

The Indians told them of a shorter route to the Falls of the Missouri, and Captain Lewis and nine men went by this route while Captain Clark with others retraced the old route. They saw nothing of each other for two months, when they all met again in August on the banks of the Missouri.

They reached St. Louis, September 23, 1806. The poeple of the United States were glad to hear of the safe return of the exploring party, for they had long

thought that the men were all dead.

Both President Jefferson and Congress put great value upon the useful information that the expedition gathered. Congress rewarded every one connected with the expedition. Each man was granted double pay for the time he spent and three hundred acres of land. To Captain Lewis was given fifteen hundred acres and to Captain Clark a thousand acres. Lewis was appointed first governor of Louisiana Territory and Clark was made governor of Missouri Territory.

129. Fur traders and missionaries led the way. Soon after this

STATUE OF SACAJAWEA
This Indian woman, as
interpreter and guide,
was a great aid to the
exploring party

expedition the fur traders pushed their way across the Rocky Mountains from St. Louis to the Pacific. They

found the "gateway of the Rockies," called the South Pass, which opened the way to the Oregon country (1824).

After the fur traders came the missionary, Nathaniel Wyeth, a New Englander who led a party to the Columbia and established a post (1832). Other missionaries followed him and began to work among the Indians of the Oregon country.

traders from Canada and Great Britain were occupying the Oregon country as far as the Columbia River. The United States and Great Britain made a treaty by which they agreed to occupy the country together. This treaty lasted until settlers from the United States made it



LEWIS AND CLARK ON THEIR WAY DOWN SNAKE RIVER

necessary to have a new treaty. In 1846 a new treaty was made and the present northern boundary was established.

ANDREW JACKSON, THE VICTOR OF NEW ORLEANS

vas born of Scotch-Irish parents who had come from

Ireland to South Carolina. His father died and his mother moved to North Carolina to be among her own people. Near the line between South Carolina and North Carolina, Andrew was born.

Schools were few and poor. In fact, Andrew was too poor himself to do anything but work. He learned far more from the pine woods in



JACKSON REFUSES TO SHINE THE OFFICER'S BOOTS

which he played than from books. At nine he was a tall, slender, freckle-faced lad, fond of sports, and full of fun and mischief. But woe to the boy that made "Andy angry!

He was a boy during the Revolutionary War. When thirteen, he learned what war means, for Colonel Tarleton came along and killed more than a hundred and wounded one hundred and fifty of Jackson's neighbors and friends. Among the killed was one of the boy's own brothers. Andrew never forgave the British.

At fourteen he was taken prisoner by the British. "Boy," said an officer, "clean these boots!" "I will not," replied Jackson. "I am a prisoner of war, and claim to be treated as such." The officer drew his sword and struck Jackson a blow upon the head, and another upon the hand. These blows left scars which Jackson

carried to his grave. He was taken a prisoner to Camden, where smallpox killed his remaining brother and



THE HERMITAGE NEAR NASHVILLE

This historic house, the home of Andrew Jackson, is now owned by the state of Tennessee

left Andrew thin and sickly looking. His mother had come to Camden to nurse her sons. A little later she lost her life in caring for American prisoners on British ships in Charleston Harbor, so Jackson was now

an orphan of the Revolution.

After the Revolutionary times had gone by, Jackson studied law and at the age of twenty was admitted to practice in the courts.

132. He moves to Tennessee. But stories of the beautiful country coming over the mountains from Tennessee stirred his blood. He longed to go, and in company with nearly a hundred men, women, and children Jackson set out for the goodly land.

They crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, where was the town of Jonesboro, not far from the home of Governor Sevier.

Jackson and the others rested before taking up their march to Nashville. From Jonesboro to Nashville, they had to look out for Indians. One night, when men, women, and children were resting in their rude tents, Jackson sat at the foot of a tree smoking his corncob

pipe. He heard "owls" hooting. These were Indian signals. "A little too natural," thought Jackson. He aroused the people, and silently they marched away. Another party, coming an hour or two later, stopped in the same place, and were massacred by Indians.

Arriving in Nashville, Jackson began the practice of law. To reach the court, he sometimes had to ride miles and miles, day after day, through thick forests, where the Indians might lie in wait.

When Tennessee was made a territory, Jackson became district attorney. He had many "ups and downs" with the bad men of the frontier. Jackson himself had a bad temper, and woe to the man who made him angry. He either got a sound thrashing or had to fight a duel.

When Tennessee became a state, Jackson was elected

to Congress. A year or so afterward (1797), he was appointed a senator to fill a vacancy. But such a position did not give him excitement enough. He resigned the next year and returned to Nashville. He was a frontier judge for a time, then he became a man of business.

133. How Jackson won a great victory. When the War of 1812 broke out there came a call to arms. The "British will capture New Orleans!" Twenty-five hundred frontiersmen rallied to Jackson's call

ANDREW JACKSON

ANDREW JACKSON

From a painting by Thomas Sully which hangs in the rooms of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania at Phila lelphia

iersmen rallied to Jackson's call. He was just the man to lead them. They decided to go to New Orleans by water.

Down the Cumberland to the Ohio they went. Down the Ohio to the Mississippi, and down the Mississippi to



JACKSON SHARES HIS ACORNS WITH THE HUNGRY SOLDIER

Natchez. Here they stopped, only to learn that there were no British near.

The twenty-five hundred men marched the long, dreary way home. Jackson was the toughest one among them. He could march farther and last longer without food than any of them. The soldiers nicknamed him "Old Hickory."

Once more he was at home, where he now was a great man among his

friends. About this time Jackson had a fierce fight with Thomas H. Benton and received a pistol shot in the shoulder. Before he got well the people who suffered from the Fort Mims massacre were calling loudly for help. Tecumseh had stirred up the Creeks to murder five hundred men, women, and children at this fort in Alabama.

Twenty-five hundred men answered Jackson's call. They marched south through a barren country. Food was scarce. His army, almost starved, threatened to go home. A half-starved soldier saw Jackson sitting under a tree and asked him for something to eat. Looking up Jackson said: "It has always been a rule with me never

to turn away a hungry man. I will cheerfully divide with you." Then he drew from his pocket a few acorns,

saying: "This is the best and only fare I have."

But Jackson soon received reënforcements, and then, in spite of all these drawbacks, he broke the power of the



A BREASTWORK OF COTTON BALES

Creeks in the great battle of Horseshoe Bend on Tallapoosa River in Alabama. After that the Indians were only too glad to sue for peace.

Jackson was hardly home again when President Madison made him a major general, and sent him with an army to guard New Orleans from the British.

After attacking and capturing Pensacola, a Spanish fort which the English occupied, he hurried his army on



A LITTLE BREASTWORK OF SUGAR BARRELS

to New Orleans. Jackson at once declared martial law and threw himself with all the energy he had into getting New Orleans ready, for the British troops were already landing.

The British general had twelve thousand veterans fresh from victories in Europe. Jackson had only half as many

men. But nearly every man was a sharpshooter. They were riflemen from the wilds of Kentucky, of Tennessee, and of Mississippi, and every man was burning with a desire to fight.

Jackson had not long to wait. On came the British in solid column, with flags flying and drums beating. The fog was breaking away. Behind the breastworks stood the Americans with cannon loaded to the muzzle and with deadly rifles primed for the fight.

The cannon were the first to fire, but the redcoats closed up their shattered ranks, and moved on. Those lines of red! How splendid and terrible they looked! The Americans gave three cheers. "Fire!" rang out along the line. The breastworks were instantly a sheet of fire.

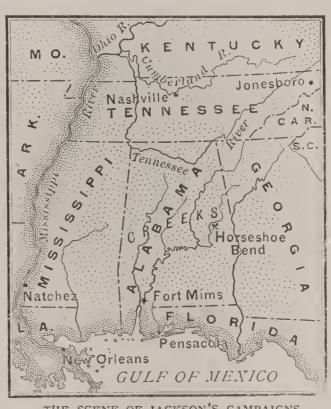


THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS
Won by Jackson after peace was made, this battle helped to make him president and to change history

Along the whole line it blazed and rolled. No human being could face it. The British soldiers broke and fled.

Once more they rallied, led by General Pakenham, a relative of the great Duke of Wellington. But who

could withstand that fire? Pakenham was slain, and again his troops fled. The battle was over. The British had lost two thousand six hundred men and Americans twenty-one! This victory was won after peace had been made between England and America. A ship was then hurrying to America with the glad news.



THE SCENE OF JACKSON'S CAMPAIGNS

Everywhere the people rejoiced over the victory of New Orleans. Jackson was a hero, and, wherever he went, crowds followed him, and cried out, "Long live the victor of New Orleans!"

For several years, Jackson remained at the head of the army in the South. The Seminole War was fought, and this tribe was compelled to make peace.

134. The people's president. The people of the United States elected Jackson president in 1828, and reëlected him in 1832 by a greater majority than before, showing that he was very popular.

President Jackson had a quarrel with the men who were managing the United States Bank. This bank kept the money for the government. He ordered that the money of the government be taken out of this bank and put in different state banks which were called "pet" banks. In the Senate of the United States at this time were three men of giant-like ability—Henry Clay, Daniel Webster,



THE TOMB OF ANDREW JACKSON

and John C. Calhoun. They joined together to oppose President Jackson in his fight against the United States Bank.

The Senate finally passed a resolution blaming President Jackson for taking the money away from the United States Bank. President Jackson was furious. He wrote a protest and sent it to the Senate. The people in the states took sides and the excitement

spread to all parts of the country.

In the Senate was another great man, Thomas H. Benton of Missouri. Although Jackson and Benton had once fought a terrible duel in Nashville, they now were good friends. Benton attacked Clay, Webster, and Calhoun in powerful speeches and defended President Jackson in every way he could. At last, after several years, he succeeded in getting the Senate to expunge, or take away, from their records the resolution blaming President Jackson. There was great rejoicing among Jackson's friends, and Senator Benton was the hero of the day.

For a long time, South Carolina and other southern states had been complaining about the high tariff which Congress had passed. In 1832 South Carolina declared in a state convention that her people should no longer

pay the tariff. She resolved to fight rather than obey the law and pay it. This was called nullification.

President Jackson was very angry when he heard of this act of South Carolina. He told General Scott to take soldiers and war vessels to Charleston, and enforce the law at all hazards. The President published a letter to the people of South Carolina, warning them not to nullify a law of Congress.

Henry Clay, the great peacemaker, now came forward. He proposed that the tariff be changed little by little. South Carolina was willing, and the danger of war passed away.

In 1837 Jackson's second term as president expired and he retired from public life after having seen his good friend, Martin Van Buren of New York, made president.

Jackson returned to Tennessee, greatly beloved by the people. There, in his home, called the "Hermitage," he spent the rest of his life. He died in 1845, at the age of seventy-eight.

FRANCIS SCOTT KEY, AUTHOR OF "THE STAR-SPANGLED BANNER"

of a fine old Maryland family. As a boy he roamed over his father's big plantation and visited friends at Annapolis, the state capital. He had a college education and studied law. He was an eloquent lawyer, and took part in a number of famous cases.

All his life Francis Scott Key was an earnest Christian. He wrote a beautiful hymn, as well as some lighter verses. He was a good man to smooth out trouble. President Andrew Jackson sent him to Alabama to straighten out

some conflicts between the white men and the Indians. He did it so well that he satisfied all parties. But above all else Key is known as the author of our national anthem, "The Star-Spangled Banner." We all ought to know how he came to write it.

During the War of 1812 British troops captured Washington City. They burned the capitol building. Then they withdrew quickly, went on board their ships, and sailed away. They were planning to attack Baltimore in the same way. While they were still some distance from it they met a small vessel flying a white flag. This meant that it had on board a messenger. He proved to be Francis Scott Key. He had been sent by our government to ask the British to release a worthy and kindly doctor whom some of their soldiers had taken prisoner.



FRANCIS SCOTT KEY

The British admiral at first protested angrily. Key pled the case skillfully. Finally the admiral agreed to let the doctor go but explained that he was planning another attack and would have to keep Key and his party on their boat until he finished it, lest some one should find out his plans.

137. The attack on Fort McHenry. For three days Key's little vessel, the "Minden," lay with the British

ships while troops were landed and the fleet made ready to attack the forts. On its deck Key paced back and forth restlessly. He knew the British plan was to take Baltimore. If they did, what would happen to his friends there? Could the militia hold the town? The British general said he "did not care if it rained militia"; he would take Baltimore and make his winter quarters there.

At length on the morning of September 13, 1814, the British fleet began its attack on Fort McHenry. All the morning their guns shelled it steadily, their great bombs falling on the fort with terrible effect. In the evening they ventured to sail nearer and renew the attack. Now the guns in the good old fort replied gallantly. A shot from a British gun pierced the flag on the fort. But as night came on, Key could see it still proudly float "in the twilight's last gleaming."

In the night the British tried to run boats past the fort. They were discovered and a fierce fire was opened on them. The ships of the British fleet replied with an equally fierce fire.

deck of the "Minden" Key anxiously watched. What did it all mean? Who was winning? In the red glare of the rockets he could dimly see the flag still flying over the fort. How he loved that star-spangled banner! Never before had it meant so much to him. Then the firing ceased. Had our fort surrendered? How long the night! At last came the early dawn. He strained his eyes. Ah, there it is! How gloriously it still floats on the early breeze, and "catches the gleam of the morning's first beam." "Tis the Star-Spangled Banner! O long may it wave O'er the land of the free and the home of the brave!"

With heart all aglow he wrote on the back of an old letter the immortal lines. The British admiral knew that his attack had failed, and he released Key and his little ship. But he did not know that he had helped to give us our national anthem.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Eli Whitney was born in Massachusetts. 2. As a boy he was very much interested in tools, and worked in his father's shop with all kinds of mechanical contrivances. 3. He earned his way through college doing carpenter work. 4. After graduation he set out to teach in Savannah. 5. He failed to get the situation, and went to visit a friend who had taken much interest in him. 6. The South needed a machine to separate the cotton fiber from the seed. 7. Whitney set to work to make one, at the suggestion of his friend, Mrs. Greene. 8. The cotton gin revolutionized the South. 9. It made cotton raising the chief industry, and brought thousands of slaves into the country.

10. Thomas Jefferson, born in Virginia, loved books; while in college he met Patrick Henry. 11. Went to the Burgesses and planned the committees of correspondence. 12. Jefferson was sent to the Congress of 1776 and wrote the Declaration of Independence. 13. After the war Jefferson was sent as minister to France. 14. Washington chose him as Secretary of State, and he founded the Democratic-Republican party. 15. Jefferson was popular as president. 16. He cut down the expenses of the government and with the savings purchased Louisiana.

17. He was the "Father of the University of Virginia."

18. The Columbia River was discovered by Gray. 19. The way to the Oregon country was made known by Lewis and Clark and by missionaries. 20. The Indians along the route received them with kindness. 21. They followed the Columbia until they reached the Pacific. Clark made a map of the region through which they had gone. 22. As a reward, Lewis was appointed governor of the Louisiana Territory and Clark of the Missouri Territory.

23. Andrew Jackson was born of poor parents; learned from the woods more than from books. 24. Jackson was captured

by the British. 25. His mother died nursing American soldiers. 26. He studied law, went over the mountains to Nashville, and was elected to Congress. 27. He also served as United States senator. 28. Jackson defeated the Indians, captured Pensacola, and won a brilliant victory at New Orleans. 29. Jackson was elected president and was opposed in his bank policy by Clay, Webster, and Calhoun. 30. Had difficully with South Carolina over nullification. 31. Died at the "Hermitage" in 1845.

32. Francis Scott Key, born in New England, was a gifted lawyer and a writer of verses. 33. He was imprisoned on his own boat while the British shelled Fort McHenry during the War of 1812. 34. He wrote "The Star-Spangled Banner"

while watching their unsuccessful attack.

Study Questions. 1. What did Whitney like to do as a boy? 2. How did he help himself through college? 3. Why did he go to Savannah? 4. Whom did he meet on the way? 5. Describe how cotton was at that time separated from the seed. 6. Describe the action of the machine invented by

Whitney.

7. Name some things boys did on a Virginia plantation in Jefferson's time. 8. Name some of Virginia's great men whom Jefferson knew. 9. Explain how the committee of correspondence worked. 10. Who were the men appointed to make a Declaration of Independence? 11. Why did Jefferson write the Declaration? 12. Why did the French people like Jefferson? 13. Picture Jefferson's return home. 14. How was Jefferson fitted to be Secretary of State? 15. What were the people then disputing about, and who were their leaders? 16. Why did Jefferson want the government to be plain and simple? 17. Who wanted it different? 18. Tell the story of the buying of Louisiana. 19. Why did Americans think the buying a great event? 20. Why did Jefferson not become president a third time? 21. What of the friendship of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson?

22. Describe the trip of Lewis and Clark up the Missouri River. 23. How did the Indians on the way receive them? 24. How did they return home? 25. What offices were given

Lewis and Clark?

26. Where was Andrew Jackson born? 27. Name some other boys who learned more from the woods than from books,

28. Mention some early experiences Jackson had with the British soldiers. 29. What other experiences did he have in the war? 30. What led him to go to Nashville? 31. Explain how Jackson outwitted the Indians. 32. What did he do as a young lawyer? 33. Tell the story of Jackson's first call to arms. 34. Give a full account of Jackson's second call to arms. 35. Imagine yourself one of Jackson's soldiers, and tell what you saw and heard at the battle of New Orleans. 36. Give an account of Jackson's fight against the United States Bank. 37. Who was Thomas H. Benton, and why did he defend President Jackson? 38. What action did South Carolina take in 1832, and what did the President do? 39. Where did Jackson live after he had finished his last term as president?

40. What kind of man was Francis Scott Key? 41. Tell the story of the writing of "The Star-Spangled Banner." 42. Memorize all its stanzas, if you do not already know

them.

Suggested Readings. Eli Whitney: Brooks, The Story of Cotton, 90-99; Southworth, Builders of Our Country, II,

108-116; Shillig, The Four Wonders, 1-32.

JEFFERSON: Wright, Children's Stories of American Progress, 55–85; Cooke, Stories of the Old Dominion, 180–192; Hart, How Our Grandfathers Lived, 317–320; Butterworth In the Days of Jefferson, 32–168, 175–206, 216–264.

Jackson: Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 162–172; Blaisdell and Ball, Hero Stories from American History, 185–198; Hart, How Our Grandfathers Lived, 284–291; Barton,

Four American Patriots, 133-192; Frost, Old Hickory.

Francis Scott Key: Captain Nathan Appleton, *The Star Spangled Banner*; Henry Watterson, "Francis Scott Key," in *Modern Eloquence*, 1143–1151.

THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

ROBERT FULTON, THE INVENTOR OF THE STEAMBOAT

rag. The invention of the steamboat. Once there were no steam engines to drive boats. On sea and river they were driven by wind, and on canals they were pulled along by horses or mules walking on the towpath beside the canal.

James Rumsey on the Potomac, John Fitch on the Delaware, and William Longstreet on the Savannah had each invented and tried some kind of steamboat, before Robert Fulton.

Fulton was born of Irish parents, in Little Britain, Pennsylvania, in 1765. At the age of three he lost his father. Young Fulton had unusual talent for drawing and painting, and inventing.

When he was twenty, he went to Philadelphia, then the largest city in the Union, and engaged in painting and drawing. His first savings were given to his widowed mother to make her comfortable.

ROBERT FULTON

After the painting by Benjamin West

Fulton finally decided to be an artist, and went to England to make his home with Benjamin West, a great painter who once lived in Philadelphia.

There Fulton became acquainted with the Duke of Bridgewater, who influenced him to become a civil engineer. Fulton now met James Watt, who was the inventor of the steam engine. At one time the young man aided Watt in building an engine.

Fulton next went to France, where he became interested in plans for inventing diving boats, torpedoes, and steamboats. Here he met Robert R. Livingston, then United States Minister to France. Livingston took a deep interest in Fulton's experiments in driving boats by steam, and furnished him the means to continue them.

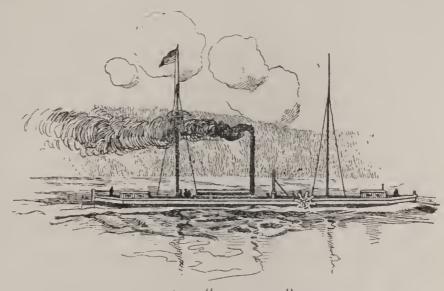
Fulton made a "model" boat, which he left in France. Shortly afterward, he built a boat twenty-six feet long and eight feet wide. In this vessel he put a steam



SCENE ON A CANAL

engine. The trials proved beyond a doubt that steamboats could be made. Livingston believed in Fulton and his steamboat. When he returned to New York, Livingston obtained

from the legislature the right to navigate the waters of the state by steam for twenty years. The one condition was that the boat should go against the cur-



THE "CLERMONT"

rent of the Hudson at the rate of four miles an hour.

Fulton got his engine from the inventors, Watt and Boulton, in England—the only place where suitable engines could be found. The engine came in 1806. A boat called the "Clermont" was built to carry it. She was one hundred and thirty feet long and eighteen feet wide. She had a mast with a sail. At both ends she was decked over, and in the middle the engine was placed. Two large side-wheels dipped two feet into the water.

140. The "Clermont" moves. At one o'clock in the afternoon of August 7, 1807, a great crowd gathered to see the first voyage of the "Clermont." Many people did not expect to see the vessel go. They believed Fulton and Livingston, had spent their money for nothing. Fulton gave his signal from the deck of the "Clermont." The people looked on in astonishment as the boat moved steadily up the Hudson.

The "Clermont" kept on going until out of sight, and the crowds of wondering people went home hardly believing what their eyes had seen. Up the river, against the current of the mighty Hudson, she made her way until Albany was reached. She had gone one hundred and fifty miles in thirty-two hours, and won a great victory for Fulton and Livingston.

When winter came the "Clermont" was taken out of the water and rebuilt. They covered her from stem to stern with a deck. Under the deck they built two cabins, with a double row of berths. They changed her name to the "North River." In the spring she made trips regularly up and down the Hudson.

141. Steamboats on all the rivers. In 1809, a steamboat was built on Lake Champlain, another on the Raritan, and a third on the Delaware. From this time forward, steamboats began to appear on all the great rivers in the settled portions of the United States.

In 1811, a steamboat was built on the Ohio River at



WATCHING THE "CLERMONT" ON ITS FIRST VOYAGE
UP THE HUDSON

Pittsburgh. It started on its trip down the beautiful Ohio. People gathered on the banks of the river to see it go by. The steamboat, at first, made a frightful noise. Hence when it came to places where news

traveled slowly, the people were sometimes frightened, and the negroes ran crying into the woods.

In 1814 a steamboat carried supplies to General Jackson at New Orleans, and helped him to win the great battle fought there.

Seven steamboats were running on the Ohio and the Mississippi at the close of the War of 1812. Before another year went by, a steamboat had made its way from New Orleans against the currents of the Mississippi and Ohio rivers to Louisville, laden with goods from Europe.

The steamboat had now won a place on the American rivers. It aided in the rapid settlement of the country. It made travel quick and easy, and it carried the goods of settlers up and down the rivers.

Robert Fulton died in 1815, deeply mourned by all his countrymen, and was buried in Trinity churchyard, New York City.

Revolution, George Washington had thought that a canal should join the Chespeake Bay with the Ohio River. This was a bold idea for so early a time and so young a statesman. When the war was over, Virginia and North Carolina granted a company the right to build the Dismal Swamp Canal, said to be the first canal built in America. But South Carolina was up and doing and immediately began work on the Charleston and Santee Canal.

After the War of 1812 the government refused to give the states money for canals. The states now had to build the canals at their own expense.

143. The Erie Canal. Before Fulton invented the steamboat, supplies had been carried to the western settlers over the mountains from the East. Now, however, steamboats puffed up the Mississippi from New

Orleans loaded down with goods that had been brought all the way from Europe. The settlers could get as much as they wanted and at a much lower cost. For this reason the merchants of New York and the East saw that they would soon be losing all their trade with the settlers. They, too, saw that they must have some connection with the West by water, and so they planned the Erie Canal. Governor De Witt Clinton was its champion. It took seven years to dig it. When it was finished it was three hundred and sixty-three miles long, forty feet wide, and four feet deep. The depth was later increased to seven feet. It stretched straight across the state of New York from Lake Erie to the Hudson River.

In the autumn of 1825, when the canal was finished, there was a great celebration. A "fleet" of canal boats carried Governor Clinton of New York and a number of other distinguished men across the state.

The merchants of the East were no longer afraid of the Mississippi route. They had a route of their own. The canal became the great highway of commerce from the East to the West and from the West to the East. New York recovered her trade, and flourishing cities grew up along the canal.

But there were cities in the East that could not use the canal. Farther south they could not dig a canal across the mountains. All their goods had to be carried over the Cumberland Gap on the backs of horses. But a new means of travel and transportation had been invented, which was far to surpass the steamboat, and which was to help every city no matter where located.

144. Railroad building. The first railroad was a very rude affair. There were no "palace cars" nor steel rails,

nor did the trains run at a speed of sixty miles an hour. Instead, cars that looked like huge wagons ran on wooden rails and were dragged along by horses.

But George Stephenson in England had thought out a plan for a machine that would pull the cars along by steam. He called his engine "Puffing Billy," He kept at work always improving it. In 1825, after eleven years of work, he made an engine that could pull both passengers and freight.

In 1828 the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad was started. A great ceremony took place. It was a memorable occasion. Charles Carroll, the only living signer of the Declaration of Independence, drove the first spade into the ground where the first rail was to be laid. As he did so he said, "I consider this among the most important acts of my life, second only to that of signing the Declaration of Independence." About the same time a railroad was begun in South Carolina. It was the Charleston & Hamburg road. By 1834 it had one hundred and thirty four miles of railroad in use.

Inventors continued to make better the locomotives. In 1831 an American company built one which ran at the rate of fifteen miles an hour. At that time this was considered a very rapid rate.

Since then railroad building and transportation have improved wonderfully. By 1842 one could travel by rail from Boston to Buffalo. But it was not until ten years later that Chicago was connected by rail with the East.

Gradually the railroads spread a network over the entire country. In 1857, St. Louis and Chicago were connected. A railroad to the Pacific coast was much

needed, and Congress voted an appropriation of \$50,000,000 for the work. By 1869, the great work was completed. Other lines to the coast were started, and today seven railroads cross the mountains, connecting the Pacific with the North, South, and Atlantic regions.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE, INVENTOR OF THE TELEGRAPH

145. The coming of the telegraph. Samuel Morse was born in Massachusetts (1791). His father was a Presbyterian minister. Young Morse went to the common schools and to Yale College.

In college he used his spare time in painting and, after graduation, he went to England and studied under the best artists. He came home and for a time painted portraits for a living.

After having spent some years abroad, in work and study, Morse was again returning home from France

when the idea of sending news by electricity first came to him.

"Why can't it be?" said Morse to a friend, who answered, "There is great need of sending news by electricity." He began, then and there, to plan a machine and to invent an alphabet. This was all done on shipboard. When he reached land he went to work with a will at his new-found problem.

on very slowly, for inventors must eat and sleep and pay their way in the world. While Morse was struggling

over his machine and trying to make himself master of the strange force called electricity, he was often hungry

and at times even at the point of starvation.

Now came a bright spot in his career. A young man named Alfred Vail, an excellent mechanic, saw Morse's telegraph instruments, and immediately believed they would be successful. Young Vail borrowed money and became Morse's



MORSE WORKING ON HIS MACHINE

assistant in the great work. For what he did he deserves credit next to Morse himself.

A patent must now be obtained and the telegraph must be so improved that they could show it to a committee of Congress. It was arranged that Vail and a mechanic by the name of Baxter should do the work behind locked doors. For, if some one should happen to see the instruments and obtain a patent first, then Morse and Vail would be ruined.

In the locked shop the two men worked steadily day after day. Vail made many improvements. Among these was the new "dot and dash" alphabet. At last, one day in January, 1838, everything was in complete

working order. Baxter, hatless and coatless, ran for Mr. Vail's father to come at once and see the telegraph work.



MORSE SHOWING HIS COMPLETED WORK

At one end of the wire stood young Vail, and at the other stood Morse. This wire was stretched around the room so that it was three miles in length. The

elder Vail wrote: "A patient waiter is no loser." He said to his son: "If you can send this message, and Mr. Morse can read it at the other end, I shall be convinced." It was done, and there was great rejoicing. The invention was hurried to Washington and young Vail took out a

patent in the name of Morse.

Morse obtained permission to set up his telegraphic instruments in two rooms of the capitol. These rooms were filled with congressmen watching the strange business. Members in one



MORSE LISTENING TO CONGRESS MAKING FUN OF HIS INVENTION

room would carry on witty conversations with persons in the other room. This was great fun for those looking on. But it was slow work talking with members of Congress and winning their help.

146. The government aids. Finally Morse asked for thirty thousand dollars to build a line from Washington to Baltimore. The bill met opposition, one member moving that a part of the money be used in building a railroad to the moon, others that it be used in trying first one thing and then another.

Morse stood leaning against the railing which separated the members from the outsiders. He was greatly excited, and turning to a friend said: "I



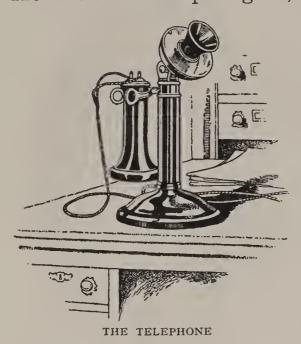
SAMUEL F. B. MORSE
From a photograph taken by
Abraham Bogardus, New
York City

have spent seven years and all that I have in making this instrument perfect. If it succeeds, I am a made man. If it fails, I am ruined. I have a large family, and not money enough to pay my board bill when I leave the city."

It was ten o'clock, March 3, 1843, the last night of that Congress. Morse gave up and went to his hotel. In the morning a friend met and congratulated him on the action of Congress in granting thirty thousand dollars for his telegraph line—the last thing Congress did that night. Morse was surprised. The telegraph line to Baltimore was built and the first dispatch was ready to send. Morse called the young woman who had been the first to congratulate him, to send this first message: "What hath God wrought?"

The success of Morse was slow at first, but he lived to

see the day when his instrument was used in Europe. He visited Europe again, was given gold medals, and



received other rewards and honors from many of the rulers of the different European countries.

He died in 1872 at the good old age of eighty-one. Congress and state legislatures paid tribute to his memory.

147. A wider use for electricity. Morse was hardly in his grave when a wonderful invention was made calling

electricity into far wider use in carrying news. This new invention was the telephone, and two men, Bell and Gray, applied for patents on it at almost the same time.

These instruments are wonderful conductors of sound, carrying, as they do, the actual words and tones of the voice.

But Marconi has gone beyond them all in his invention. He sends the electric wave forth without the aid of a wire, thus giving rise to wireless telegraphy.

CYRUS WEST FIELD, WHO LAID THE ATLANTIC CABLE BETWEEN AMERICA AND EUROPE

148. The Atlantic Cable. Cyrus W. Field was born in Massachusetts in 1819. His grandfather was a Revolutionary soldier. Cyrus went to school in his native town of Stockbridge, and at fifteen was given a place in a New York store at fifty dollars a year. Before he was twenty-one, he went into business for himself. At the

end of a dozen years, he was the head of a prosperous firm. In 1853, he retired from active business.

Field became interested in a man who was engaged in connecting Newfoundland with the mainland by means of a telegraph line. "Why not make a telegraph line to span the Atlantic?" thought Field. He went to work, and put his schemes before Peter Cooper and other generous men. They believed in them.

Field next went abroad and laid his plan before a number of Englishmen. He pleaded so eloquently that they, too, were convinced. He returned to America to lay the matter before Congress and ask that body to vote him a sum of money.

Congress was very slow about it, and the bill did not pass until the last days of the session, and President Pierce signed it the last day of his term.

Field returned to England and watched over the making of his "cable." In August, 1857, everything was ready. The cable lay coiled on shipboard, ready to be let out in the Atlantic. The great ship started, and

everything went well till three hundred and thirty-five miles of the cable had been let out, when it broke in two. It was the same as losing half a million dollars.

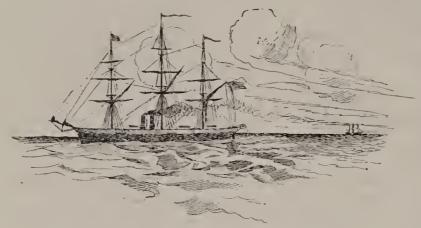
Field went back to England and began promptly to prepare for a second trial. He then came to America



PRESIDENT PIERCE SIGNING THE FIELD BILL

and made arrangements to use the "Niagara," a large vessel. The British ship "Agamemnon" was also taken

to help in this second trial. The ships started in midocean, one going one way and one going the other way.



LAYING THE FIRST ATLANTIC CABLE

This time only one hundred and eleven miles were laid, when the cable again parted.

Field hastened to London to meet the men

who had backed him in his undertaking with their money. It was a council of war after a terrible defeat! But Mr. Field did not believe in surrender, even to the sea.

On the seventeenth of July, 1858, the ships again set sail for mid-ocean. They spliced the cable, and the "Niagara," with Mr. Field on board, sailed away for Newfoundland. The British ship went the other way. This time they were successful. Both countries were excited. Queen Victoria flashed a message under the sea to President Buchanan.

Great was the rejoicing in New York, the home of Mr. Field. A religious service, expressive of the deep interest of the people in the success of his work, was held in Trinity Church, at which two hundred clergymen appeared. National salutes were fired, a great procession was formed, an address was made by the mayor of the city and, at a late hour, a grand banquet was held. While the banquet was going on, the cable gave its last throb and parted.

The very day that a whole city rose up to do honor to the Atlantic telegraph and its author, it gave its last flash and then went to sleep forever in its ocean grave.

After five years of slow and toilsome work, caused by the fact that the War between the States was raging in the United States, Cyrus W. Field was again ready. When the vessel, bearing the cable, was within six hundred miles of land, the cable broke again.

149. The final success. An Anglo-American Telegraph Company was now formed. Mr. Field subscribed \$50,000, Daniel Gooch, \$100,000, and another person promised to bear a part of the expense. On Friday they set out and on another Friday they reached America with the cable safely laid. Mr. Field sent this message to England: "Hearts Content, July 27, 1866. We arrived here at nine o'clock this morning. All well. Thank God, the cable is laid, and is in perfect working order."

The success of this undertaking, after so many years of failure, produced a great effect throughout the civilized world. Mr. Field was the center of all rejoicing. Congress voted him a gold medal. England did honor to his name. The Paris Exposition of 1867 gave him the highest medal it had to bestow. From Italy, he received a decoration. States and chambers of commerce in all parts of the nation passed



CYRUS W. FIELD
From a photograph by Elliott
and Fry, London

resolutions in praise of his great work. After the work was finished, he took a trip around the world and received

honors from many nations. Mr. Field lived at Tarrytown, New York. He died in New York City in 1892, at the age of seventy-three.

CRAWFORD WILLIAMSON LONG, THE DOCTOR WHO FIRST USED ETHER IN AN OPERATION

150. Inside the walls of a great hospital. Did you ever walk through a great modern hospital? There everything is quiet and orderly. You will find scores of clean rooms with white beds for sick people, rolling chairs for those getting better, nurses in spotless white to care for the patients, skilled doctors to cure their diseases, wonderful inventions of all kinds for the surgeons to use in their work. Nowhere else is so much done to relieve human pain. A good hospital is one of the finest things in the world today. Yet it could not do half of its work without one little thing. This thing is "ether." When



CRAWFORD WILLIAMSON LONG

a man breathes it he goes to sleep so soundly that he feels no pain even when the surgeon has cut deep into his body. What a wonderful discovery! How much it helps both the doctor and the patient! Without it there could be no modern surgery. Think, therefore, how wonderful a thing it was when on March 30, 1842, Dr. C. W. Long first found

he could use it in operating on his patients. This was a great day in medical history.

151. A wide-awake Georgia boy. Who was this Dr. Long? In the same year that Andrew Jackson whipped the English at New Orleans, a sturdy little boy was born

in Danielsville, Georgia. This was Crawford W. Long, who was to become one of the famous men of his state. At school young Crawford did his classwork well, and was promoted rapidly. When only fourteen years old he went to the University of Georgia, one of our oldest colleges. He looked so young that the boys called him "the



MEMORIAL TABLET IN HONOR OF CRAWFORD W. LONG

Baby." He roomed with another famous Georgian, Alexander H. Stephens, who later became vice-president of the Confederacy. Long was a bright lad, and he studied hard. At commencement he graduated second in his class.

152. A young doctor. He did not feel that he had finished his education. He wanted to be a great doctor. So he studied medicine and finally went to a great medical college in Philadelphia. At last he was ready. He settled down as a doctor in Jefferson, Georgia. He was a fine fellow, and the people liked him. He was tall and broad shouldered, and loved to hunt, swim and fish. He could jump on his horse without using a stirrup. But besides being fond of outdoor sports, he loved to read and to study. He worked hard at his profession, and soon became so well known that people began to come long distances to see him.

153. Long finds a new use for ether. In those days people knew that "laughing gas," if you breathed it, would make you laugh and act in a funny way. Young people used to have a great deal of fun with it at school or at their parties. Sometimes they used ether instead. With them it was all a frolic. But Long watched them carefully. He noticed that the hard blows they sometimes got did not seem to hurt them while they were breathing the ether. So he thought, "Why can I not make a patient breathe it when I have to cut into his body? Maybe he will not suffer." One day a young man came to him with a knot on the back of his neck, and wanted it cut out. "Now here is a fine chance," thought Long, "to try the effects of the ether." The young man was willing, so Long gave it to him and cut out the knot. When the young man was told that the operation was all over, it was hard to make him believe it. He had felt no pain. This use of ether made modern surgery possible, and Crawford W. Long was the first doctor to perform an operation on a patient who was under its influence.

The University of Pennsylvania, where he studied medicine, has put up a tablet in his memory. It reads:

To the memory
of
Crawford W. Long
who first used ether as an
anesthetic in surgery
March 30, 1842.

In his native state, Georgia, there has also been erected a monument in his honor.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Rumsey, Fitch, and Longstreet were inventors of steamboats before Fulton. 2. Fulton went to England to study art and became interested in steam engines. 3. He invented the "Clermont," which ran more than four miles an hour. 4. The building of canals began at the close of the Revolutionary War. 5. The Erie Canal was built because steamboats on the Mississippi were taking all the trade with western settlers away from New York. 6. The locomotive was invented by George Stephenson, and gradually railroads were built to connect all parts of the country.

7. Samuel Morse went to Yale College; studied painting in England. 8. He planned a telegraph instrument on shipboard; afterwards Vail helped him perfect it. 9. Morse took his telegraph to Washington, showed it to Congress, and after many discussions received a grant of money. 10. Bell and Gray invented the telephone; Marconi invented wireless

telegraphy.

11. Cyrus West Field made money so fast that he retired at thirty-four. 12. He became interested in a cable, and after many failures succeeded in laying a permanent one across the

Atlantic in 1866.

13. Crawford W. Long studied medicine at the University of Pennsylvania. 14. He was the first doctor to use ether as an anesthetic in surgery. 15. The anesthetic makes modern surgery possible. 16. Long performed the first operation with the use of ether on March 30, 1842.

Study Questions. 1. What were the early ways of driving boats? 2. Before Fulton, who invented boats on American rivers? 3. Tell the story of Robert Fulton until 1807. 4. How fast was Fulton's first boat to go against the current? 5. Where did Fulton get the engine for the "Clermont"? 6. Picture the "starting" and the after history of the "Clermont." 7. Tell the story of the spread of the steamboat, the first canals, and why the Erie Canal was built. 8. Tell the story of the railroad.

9. Tell of Morse's early life. 10. When did the idea of sending news by electricity first come to him? 11. Tell the story of his early trials. 12. Who aided him? 13. Picture

scene within the "locked shop." 14. Tell the story of the instrument in Washington. 15. What did Morse say on the night his bill was before Congress? 16. What was the message sent by the young lady? 17. Mention something about Bell, Gray, Marconi.

18. How old was Cyrus Field when he retired from business?
19. Who was Peter Cooper? 20. Tell the story of Field's early efforts at cable laying. 21. Picture the scenes in New York. 22. The final message. 23. What honors were given

Field?

24. Why would modern surgery be impossible without ether? 25. Tell of Long's early life. 26. How did the idea of using ether as an anesthetic in performing operations come to him?

Suggested Readings. ROBERT FULTON: Glascock, Stories of Columbus, 186–188; Wright, Children's Stories of American Progress, 104–120; Mowry, American Inventions and Inventors. 194–222; Thurston, Robert Fulton.

Samuel F. B. Morse: Trowbridge, Samuel Finley Breese Morse; Mowry, American Inventions and Inventors, 270-277.

CYRUS WEST FIELD: Judson, Cyrus W. Field; Mowry, American Inventions and Inventors, 278–285; Doubleday, Stories of Inventors, 3–16.

CRAWFORD W. Long: Laird W. Nevius, The Discovery of Modern Anaesthesia, by Whom Was It Made?

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA

SAM HOUSTON, HERO OF SAN JACINTO

154. Gets a good start in life. Young Houston was born of Scotch-Irish parents, in Virginia (1793). His father had fought under General Morgan in the Revolution. Sam Houston did not have much schooling, and when he was only thirteen his family moved to east Tennessee. Made angry by his older brother, he left home and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. He

liked the wild life of these Indians and took part in the Indian boys' pastimes of hunting, fishing, and playing games.

He was now eighteen. He returned home and taught school a term at the Marysville Academy. In the War of 1812 General Jackson called the men of Tennessee to arms. Young



THE BATTLE OF HORSESHOE BEND

Here Houston, under Jackson in the victory over the Creeks,

won great distinction

Houston answered the call, and fought against the Indians in the great "Battle of Horseshoe Bend." He

was dangerously wounded after doing heroic deeds, and was a long time getting well.



From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collection of the War Department, Washington, D. C.

At twenty-five he began to study law in Nashville and in six months—just a third of the time said to be necessary—he was ready to practice. Houston's rise in the law was rapid and wherever the people knew him, he won their favor. He went from one position to another until the people elected him to Congress.

He was in Congress four years. He won many friends by his gracious behavior. The people of Tennessee made him their governor

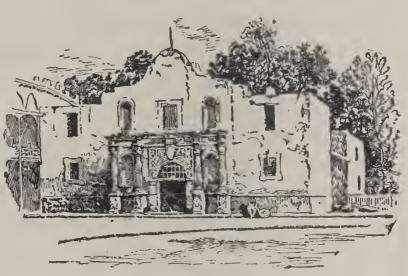
155. Runs away to live with Indians. But suddenly, without warning, Houston resigned as governor, and forsook his home and friends. He sailed down the Mississippi River to the Arkansas, and up this river several hundred miles to the land of his early friends, the Cherokees, whom the United States government had sent to that far-away country.

Here Houston found the old chief—now the head of his tribe—who had adopted him as a son years before on the banks of the Tennessee. The chief threw his arms around him in great affection and said: "My son, eleven winters have passed since we met. My heart has wandered often where you were; and I heard you were a great chief among your people I have

heard that a dark cloud had fallen on the white path you were walking, and when it fell you turned your

thoughts to my wigwam. I am glad of it—it was done by the Great Spirit. . . . My wigwam is yours, my home is yours, my people are yours,—rest with us."

When Andrew Jackson became president of the



THE ALAMO, SAN ANTONIO

Of its defense by Travis, Crockett, and their few
men it was said, "Thermopylæ had her messenger of woe—the Alamo had none"

United States, Houston went, in his Indian dress, on a visit to the president at Washington. There he was warmly received by his old friend from Tennessee.



HOUSTON AT SAN JACINTO
Where his battle cry, "Remember the Alamol"
won Texas independence from Mexico

Once more he turned his face toward the wilderness. He stopped in Tennessee and was warmly greeted by his old friends in that region. He did not, however, stay very long in Tennessee.

Texans. Neither did he stay long

with the Cherokees, but hastened to Texas where the people were already murmuring against the treatment they were receiving from Mexico.

The people of Texas finally issued a Declaration of Independence. Thereupon the Mexicans resolved to send a large army into Texas and force the people to submit to Mexico.

A most important event of this war was the capture, by a large Mexican force, of an old fortress called the



SCENE OF HOUSTON'S CAMPAIGN

Alamo. It was defended by one hundred and forty men, among them the famous "Davy" Crockett and Colonel Bowie—the inventor of the bowie knife. Only six Texans were alive after the capture of the fort. These six heroic men died fighting the Mexicans to the last.

"Remember the Alamo!" became the war cry of every Texan. The Mexicans were approaching, five thousand strong, under General Santa Anna. General Houston commanded about seven hundred Texans.

Suddenly the news came that General Fannin and his men, five hundred in number,

had been massacred bythe Mexicans at Goliad. The cause of Texan independence looked dark indeed.

157. Wins a wonderful battle. Houston began a retreat of two hundred and fifty miles to the eastward.

Santa Anna followed closely after him, but scattered his men, just as Houston wanted him to do, until he had with him but eighteen hundred men. They were now on the banks of the San Jacinto River.

Houston waited until the Mexicans were a bit careless; then seven hundred Texans charged



MAP OF THE WEST AFTER THE WAR WITH MEXICO

Showing the territory added to the United States after the

Louisiana Purchase

the breastworks of the Mexicans. After the first fire they clubbed their guns and went at it, pioneer fashion, with the cry, "Remember the Alamo!" The right and the left wings of the Mexicans gave way first, and then the center.

They retreated, expecting to cross a deep, narrow stream on a log bridge, but Houston had had the bridge destroyed. The slaughter was terrific. The stream was choked with Mexicans and their horses.

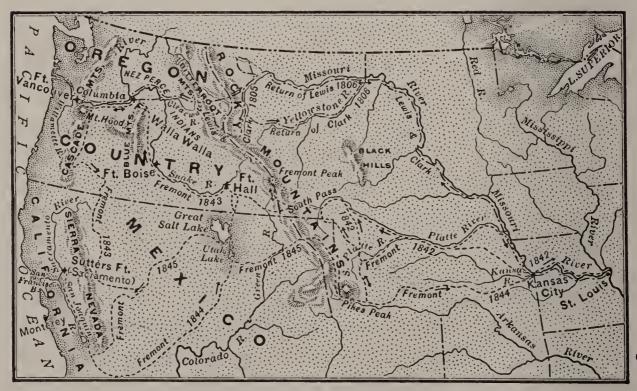
Santa Anna was captured and was turned over to the Texas government. Many thought he ought to die because of the massacres at the Alamo and Goliad, but Houston was generous toward the beaten man, and sent him on to visit Washington.

Houston had been badly wounded, and sailed to New Orleans for medical care. He returned to be elected first president of the "Lone Star Republic," as Texas was called. He was reëlected for a second term and served his country well.

Houston wanted Texas made a part of the United States. This was afterwards done, and war followed with Mexico. In 1845, Texas sent Houston to the Senate, where he served his state for fourteen years. He fully believed in the Union. He died in 1863.

JOHN C. FREMONT, THE PATHFINDER OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

158. Gets his first taste of exploring. Fremont's father was a Frenchman who was driven to America by the terrible French Revolution. His mother came of a distinguished family of Virginia.



THE PATHWAYS OF THE EARLY EXPLORERS OF THE WEST

John Charles Fremont was born in Savannah (1813) while his parents were on a journey through the South.

His father died soon after, and his mother went to live in Charleston, South Carolina.

After a time at a good school, Fremont entered the junior class in Charleston College (1828). After leaving college he spent two and a half years on a voyage to South America.

On his return he joined a company of engineers sent by the governor to explore the mountains between South



JOHN C. FREMONT
After a photograph from life

Carolina and Tennessee, in order to find a suitable place for a railroad. This work was through a region rough, wild, and full of beauty. It gave young Fremont a taste for exploration which never left him.

Fremont's longing for a wild life was satisfied when he was made assistant to a famous Frenchman who was exploring the vast unsettled region between the upper Missouri River and Canada.

159. Reaches the crest of the Rockies. After this work Fremont returned to Washington and later married Jessie Benton, the daughter of the senator from Missouri. Senator Benton was a great friend of President Jackson.

Fremont was now related to a powerful man who was deeply interested in the growth of the "Great West." Benton's repeated speeches on the West and on the Oregon country called attention to the importance of the Pacific slope.

In 1842, Fremont, now a lieutenant of engineers, received permission from the government to explore the



GAZING OUT AT THE BEGINNINGS
OF RIVERS

South Pass of the Rocky Mountains. With a party of hardy frontiersmen, and assisted by that famous guide, Kit Carson, he passed up the Kansas River, crossed to the Platte, went up this river, and finally reached the South Pass.

Standing on the watershed of a continent, he saw the beginnings of the rivers that flow into

the Atlantic, and of others that stretched away through unknown regions to the Pacific. He took four men and climbed what has since been called Fremont Peak, one of the highest of the Rockies, about 13,800 feet above the sea. At the top Fremont unfurled the Stars and Stripes in all its glory!

to the Pacific. Fremont reported his discovery at Washington, and immediately applied for orders to make an expedition for the purpose of discovering a more southerly route to both California and Oregon.



FREMONT'S MEN BUILDING A FIRE IN THE SNOW

Heleft the little town of Kansas City with his guide, Kit Carson, in May, 1843. In September, after traveling seventeen hundred miles, the little party beheld the shores of Great Salt Lake. What feelings must have stirred these men, shut in for months by mountains, at seeing what appeared to be an ocean, here in the midst of a continent! Little did they dream of that hardy band of immigrants, so soon to follow, who would make the shores of this sea blossom like a garden!

'As we looked over that vast expanse of water and strained our eyes along the silent shores, over which hung so much doubt and uncertainty, I could hardly repress the almost irresistible desire to continue our exploration.'

After making preparations, the party crossed over to



FREMONT'S EXPEDITION REACHING SUTTER'S FORT, CALIFORNIA

a branch of the Columbia River. Down this they traveled until Fort Vancouver was reached, November 4. Here Fremont was the guest of the governor of the British Hudson Bay Company.

November 10, on the way home, the little party started to make the circuit of the Great Basin, a vast depression beyond the east wall of the Sierra Nevada Mountains. But very soon they found deep snow on the mountains. They crossed into the Great Basin, but did not know it.

According to Fremont's observations, they were in the latitude of San Francisco Bay and only seventy miles from it. But what miles! Up and down that snowy mountain, which the Indians told him no man could cross in winter, with snow upon it as deep as the trees were high, and places where if a man slipped off he would fall half a mile at a time!

They attempted to cross without a guide, in the dead of winter. In forty days the men and the surviving horses—a woeful procession crawling along one by one, skeleton men leading skeleton horses—arrived at Sutter's Fort (Sacramento) in the beautiful valley of the Sacramento. Here genial warmth, trees in foliage, grassy ground, and flowers made a fairy contrast to the famine and freezing they had met on the mountains they had



THE UNFURLING OF THE AMERICAN FLAG IN CALIFORNIA

The Stars and Stripes were raised for the first time in

California near Monterey in 1846

climbed.

After enjoying the hospitality of Colonel Sutter, Fremont again crossed the mountains some five hundred miles farther south where the beautiful San Joaquin Rivermakes a gap or pass.

He was once more in the Great

Basin, where he found a tribe of Digger Indians, so named because they got most of their food by digging

in the ground. Roots, insects, and lizards were their common food.

Pushing forward with great energy, he reached Utah Lake, thus having nearly made the circuit of the Great Basin.

Fremont hastened to Washington with the story of his discoveries. General Scott now recommended that he be made captain.

Fremont's third expedition, with Carson as a helper, began in the spring of 1845, and aimed to explore the Great Basin and the coast of California and Oregon.

161. Whips the Mexicans in California. Little did Fremont —or any of his men —think what fortune had in store for them. On his way to the Oregon country Fremont received news that the Mexicans were planning to kill all the Americans in the Sacramento Valley. War had already broken out between the United States and Mexico, but he did not know it. He returned, reaching the valley in May, 1846, and the settlers rushed to join him. In one month he had beaten the Mexicans and declared northern California independent.

Fremont marched with all speed to Monterey and occupied it. This practically finished the conquest of all California in sixty days.

Fremont returned to Washington, gave up his place in the regular army, and went to live in California. His journey to California made up his fourth expedition. The state elected him to the United States Senate. Fremont was of great service in the Senate in giving advice concerning the long-talked-of railroad to the Pacific coast.

Early in 1848 gold was discovered in California. Everybody caught the "gold fever," and the rush to California called loudly for a railroad. Fremont made his fifth expedition to survey three routes to the Pacific. After great hardships he returned to Washington to report what he had found.

He now went to live in New York City and became a member of the party opposed to the extension of slavery. The new party, the Republican, nominated him as its first candidate for president (1856). He was defeated after a most exciting time, yet he carried all the Northern states but four.

During the war between the states he was made a major general, but after a year or two he resigned. He was talked of for president in 1864, but did not make the race.

After the war was over he was interested in a great continental railroad. From 1878 to 1881, he was governor of Arizona. Congress voted him a pension just before he died in 1890.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Houston had little schooling and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. 2. Wounded at Horse Shoe Bend; studied law in Nashville; was sent to Congress for four years; and was elected governor of Tennessee. 3. Went to live with the Cherokees again, and then went to Texas. 4. The capture of the Alamo. 5. Houston won the battle of San Jacinto; was made president of the republic of Texas; and later elected to the United States Senate.

6. Fremont went to school in Charleston, but left for a voyage to South America. 7. He worked for exploring parties; by marriage he became related to a great man interested in the Far West. 8. Fremont explored the South Pass, in his first expedition; on his second, saw Great Salt Lake, and

crossed the mountains with great suffering. g. Fremont crossed a third time, conquered California; was made a senator, and became first candidate of the Republican party for the presidency.

Study Questions. 1. What was peculiar in Houston's early life? 2. What had he done before he began to study law? 3. What made people like him? 4. Where was the battle of Horse Shoe Bend fought? 5. How did the Cherokee chief welcome him? 6. Why did Houston go back to Tennessee? 7. What drew him to Texas? 8. What were the first bad defeats of the Texans? 9. Tell the story of San Jacinto. 10. What kind of general, president, and senator did Houston make?

11. Who was John Charles Fremont? 12. What of his youthful days? 13. What experience in early days after college prepared him for his great work? 14. Who was Kit Carson? 15. Describe Fremont's journey to the South Pass. 16. Tell what was seen and what was done there. 17. What expedition did he now plan? 18. Picture the scene on the discovery of Great Salt Lake. 19. Picture his exploration of the Great Basin and crossing the Sierras. 20. What was the contrast at Sutter's Fort? 21. Describe the Digger Indians. 22. At what was Fremont's third expedition aimed, and what did it really accomplish? 23. What was the "gold fever"? 24. Tell of Fremont's later life.

Suggested Readings. Houston: Bruce, Life of General Houston.

FREMONT: Bigelow, Life of John Charles Fremont, 1-216, 319-373, 379-466.

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD

HENRY CLAY, THE FOUNDER OF THE WHIG PARTY AND
THE GREAT PACIFICATOR

163. The mill boy of the slashes. Henry Clay was born in Virginia in the year of Burgoyne's surrender (1777). His father was a Baptist preacher, with a fine voice and a graceful way of speaking. He died when Henry was four years old.

Little Henry lived near the Slashes, a low, flat region, and went to school in a log cabin. When not at school he worked to help support the family. He could often be seen walking barefooted behind the plow, or riding the horse with a rope bridle to mill. From this he was called the "mill boy of the Slashes."

Henry was a raw-boned, awkward lad. The other boys laughed at him, but he read books when not at work, and soon could speak better than those who made fun of him.

At fourteen he was a clerk in a store. But he seemed



THE "MILL BOY OF THE SLASHES"

made for other things. He was put in the office of a famous lawyer who was clerk in one of Virginia's courts.

A great judge liked him and took him to be his private secretary. For four years Clay wrote down the judge's

law decisions. The great man often talked with Clay and advised him about the kind of books to read.

After studying law for a year, Clay began to practice in Richmond. He had plenty of time, so he formed a

debating club, in which he was easily the leader.

good in Kentucky. Finally he made up his mind to go to Lexington, Kentucky, and try his fortune. There his rise in the law was rapid. His fame grew, and he became widely



HENRY CLAY IN CONGRESS

Urging war in 1811, with England or France or even both if necessary

known as the lawyer who seldom lost a case.

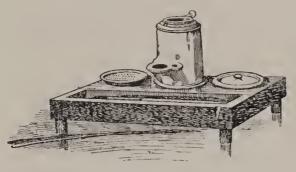
He married a well-to-do young lady and lived near Lexington on a beautiful estate called Ashland.

People liked Henry Clay. His manner was charming and his voice was pleasing. He was warm-hearted. He understood people quickly. No wonder he had many friends! No wonder they sent him to the Kentucky legislature and to Congress!

In Congress they liked and admired him. Soon they made him Speaker of the House. This meant that he presided over its meetings and guided its work. No one has ever done this better than he did.

165. A leader in the war of 1812. Clay was always proud of his country. He was quick to flare up if he thought any one did it an injury. When the English began to seize sailors on our ships and to interfere with

our trade, he spoke his mind. Others felt as he did, and finally in 1812 we went to war with England.



INKSTAND USED BY HENRY CLAY

Clay made speeches in Congress and over the country, stirring up the war spirit. "On to Canada!" was his cry. But the capture of Canada was not so easy. Many generals failed

and only Harrison and Perry made much headway in defeating the British in Canada.

When the time for peace came President Madison sent Henry Clay and other noted Americans to Ghent, in Belgium, to meet the British agents. After many months of talking and disputing, they finally agreed on a treaty. (1814). This treaty has since been called the "Treaty of Ghent." Great Britain and America were both glad that peace had come.

166. Two great compromises. From 1819 to 1821 Congress was debating the admission of Missouri into the Union as a slave state. The North opposed and the South favored, the admission of Missouri. The excitement spread to the state legislatures and to the people. Many meetings were held, at which fiery speeches were made.

Wise men thought the union was in danger. Clay saw the danger. He set to work to make peace between the two sides if he could. Day and night he urged his friends to come to some agreement. In Congress he spoke as even he had never spoken before. At last they passed the famous Missouri Compromise. This resolution provided that Missouri should be admitted as a slave state, but that no other slave state north of the

line of 36 degrees 30 minutes should ever be created. Both sides were pleased and the excitement died out.

We have seen how South Carolina threatened to refuse to pay the tariff in 1832, and how President Jackson hurried the army and the navy there to make her people pay it. War seemed at hand. But Henry Clay came forward again and introduced the Compromise Tarrif Law. It was called a compromise because it gave each side a part of what it wished. Calhoun and other Carolinians favored it, because by this law the tariff was greatly reduced. It was carried through Congress. Both the President and South Carolina dropped their preparations for war. Again Henry Clay was hailed by the people as "the great pacificator" or peacemaker.

of the Whig party. In the old days Jefferson and Hamilton had been the leaders of two great parties. Now Jackson and Clay were the men about whom the people gathered. The sturdy men in the new West looked up to Jackson. He was a fighter and a born westerner. They rallied around him and formed the new Democratic party.

Some men did not like Jackson and his followers. They looked about for a lead.er



HENRY CLAY
From a daguerreotype owned by
Garrett Brown, Jr., Chicago

This was Clay's chance. He was popular, he was a fine speaker, he was a born leader. So they followed

him and called their party the Whigs. It became a great party, but it never had a greater leader than



HENRY CLAY BEING CONGRATULATED

In 1850, after his great plea before the Senate for the Federal Union

Clay. Again and again they ran him for president. Every time something happened to keep him from being elected. He had every other honor. He was a cabinet member and for years a United States senator. He had more friends than any one else in the

country. They liked his warm heart. They admired his courage, They believed him when he said: "I had rather be right than be President."

168. A great peacemaker. War with Mexico had come, and with it a great victory for the American army. The treaty of peace gave us a great deal of new territory. Should this be open to slavery? The South said, "Yes," The North said, "No." The quarrel grew so bitter that the Union was again in danger.

Clay now came forward with a plan to settle the quarrel. Each side was to give up something. He made a great speech in favor of this compromise. He was now an old man. He was too weak to climb the steps of the Capitol alone. He leaned on the arm of a friend who helped him. As he entered the Senate, he found it crowded.

People had come from distant cities to hear him speak. When Clay arose the people clapped their hands, a strange thing in the Senate. The people were pleased. For two days his ringing words flowed on. Under the excitement he was young again.

On the second day, some one suggested that he rest, and the Senate adjourn. But he refused; he might not be able to go on the next day. After he had finished his speech, a great crowd rushed forward to congratulate him. No such scene ever had been witnessed before in the Senate.

Congress finally passed the Compromise of 1850. Both political parties pledged themselves to obey it. Public meetings in all parts of the country resolved to abide by it and the country rested for a time from the slavery question.

Henry Clay's work was done. On June 29, 1852, he died in Washington, the scene of so many of his triumphs.

A great monument at Lexington, Kentucky, testifies to the people's love for "Harry" Clay.

DANIEL WEBSTER, THE DEFENDER OF THE CONSTITUTION

of good Puritan stock, in 1782, in New Hampshire. He was not a strong child. No one dreamed that one day he would have an iron-like body. Daniel spent much of his time playing in the woods and fields. He loved the birds and beasts that he found there. He went to school, but the schoolmasters were not very learned, and Daniel could read better than most of them. The teamsters, stopping to water their horses, were glad to hear him read. He went to work in an old-fashioned

sawmill, but even there he found time to read books in odd moments.



HOUSE AT ELM FARMS

The birthplace of Daniel Webster. The site is now occupied by the New Hampshire State
Orphan Asylum

One spring day his father took him to Exeter Academy to prepare for college. The boys laughed at his rough dress and timid manners. The little fellow was deeply hurt. But there was something natural about him

that the boys admired, and he soon had friends.

He finally entered Dartmouth College at the age of fifteen. He still kept the reading habit. The students liked and admired him. They had a feeling that he would some day be a great man. At this time he was tall and thin, with high cheek bones. His eyes were deep set, and his voice was low and musical in its tones. He loved to speak, even then. At the age of eighteen Webster gave the Fourth of July oration in his college town. The speech was full of the love of country and of the Union, then in its first days of trial.

170. Lawyer and statesman. He never forgot his father's sacrifice in sending him to college. After he had finished at Dartmouth, Webster taught school in order that he might help his parents send his elder brother to college. He afterwards studied law. But he longed to finish his law studies in Boston. Finally good fortune put him in the office of Christopher Gore, a wise man, a great lawyer, and a brilliant statesman. In his office

Webster studied until he was given the right to practice law.

Within a few years, he was earning enough to enable him to take a life partner, the beautiful and accomplished Grace Fletcher, the daughter of a minister. She made a delightful home for him and their children.

Webster was gaining name and fame as a lawyer, but the approach of the War of 1812 drew him into politics. He was elected to Congress, and took his seat in 1813. Webster's most important speech was in favor of a war carried on by the navy: "If the war must be continued, go to the ocean. There the united wishes and exertions of the nation will go with you. Even our party divisions cease at the water's edge."

After the war, Webster left Congress for a number of years. He moved to Boston, where his law practice

grew rapidly. His power as a leader was soon recognized. He was sent by Massachusetts to the United States Senate. There he won undying fame as the greatest of American orators. He was now a great man. When he entered a room,



Scene of the fourth of July Oration

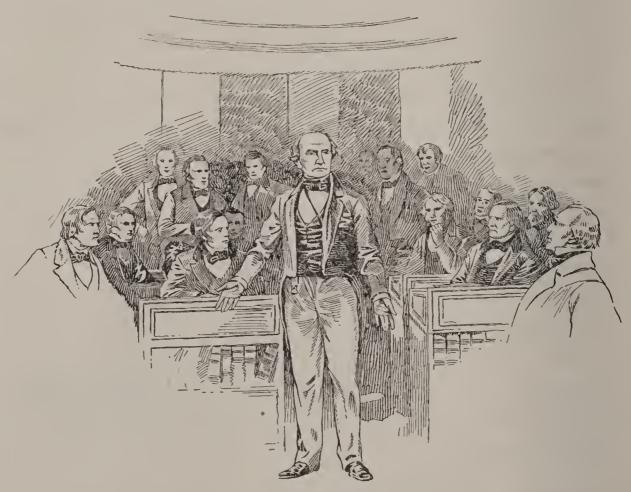
Daniel Webster asserting the dignity of patriotism at

Dartmouth, July 4, 1800

by his mere look and presence he drew all eyes toward him, and all conversation was hushed. In size,

he looked larger and broader than he really was. His forehead was broad and massive. It towered above his large, dark, deep-set eyes. His hair was as black and glossy as a raven's wing. Thus he looked in 1830 in the Senate, when he made his famous reply to Senator Hayne of South Carolina.

171. The greatest orator of his time. Hayne had spoken against a protective tariff and in favor of nullification. Webster felt called upon to reply. He denied the right of a state to nullify a law of Congress, and said that nullification was another name for secession. He



Scene in the united states senate Daniel Webster defending the Federal Constitution against Hayne's idea of nullification

closed his great speech with these words: "When my eyes shall be turned to behold, for the last time, the sun

in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once glorious Union . . .

but may I see our flag with not a stripe erased or polluted, nor a single star obscuredbut everywhere spread all over in characters of living light, blazing on its ample folds, as they float over the sea and over the land that sentiment, dear to every American heart—Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!"

This speech made Daniel Webster immortal. It did more; it fired the heart of many a lover of the growing nation to a new loyalty.



DANIEL WEBSTER

From a daguerreotype taken in 1850 by
J. J. Hawes of Boston

172. Settles our northern boundary line. In 1840 the Whig party won a great victory. This was Webster's party, he became Secretary of State, in the new president's cabinet. At once he set to work to smooth out troubles that had arisen with England. Finally he arranged a great treaty which settled all these things. It fixed definitely the boundary line between the United States and Canada.

After Webster had made this treaty, he left the cabinet and went back to the Senate. Here he helped Clay to put through his last great compromise. Webster put his heart into the task, for he believed the Union was in danger. On March 7, 1850, he made a famous speech for the compromise. It was a great speech. But many of his friends in the North thought it conceded too much to the South, and were displeased. He was now an old man and his last days were made bitter by the thought that some old friends had forsaken him.

One bright spot for Webster lay in the fact that President Fillmore invited him to be Secretary of State again. After two years of service, he went back to Boston. He



THE UNITED STATES IN 1850

was received with joy by some of his friends and neighbors, and was hailed with shouts by the multitude. This must have made his heart leap with gratitude, for the praise of friends is pleasant. But men saw he was not like his former self. He went to his home at Marshfield, where he died, October 24, 1852.

Webster was a great lawyer, a great statesman, and a great orator.

JOHN C. CALHOUN, THE CHAMPION OF STATE RIGHTS

173. A famous school. John C. Calhoun was born in South Carolina, in the same year that Webster was (1782).

His parents were Scotch-Irish. His father, a Revolutionary patriot, died while John was still a boy.

From his mother he learned how to run the plantation. He read eagerly all the books he could get. Most of them were serious books written for grown people. His mind grew strong as he mastered them and thought out his own ideas in the fields and in the woods.



At eighteen he entered a From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collection of the War Department, Washington, D. C. well-known school taught by his brother-in-law, Mr. Waddell. Here he studied with other boys who later became famous. In two years he entered Yale College. When in college he studied hard, and graduated in less than the usual time.

174. Enters public life. Calhoun studied law diligently for three years, a year and a half of the time in his native state, and a year and a half in Connecticut. He began to practice law in South Carolina, but did not have great success. Perhaps it was because the law was too dry for him, or perhaps because he was soon elected to the legislature of his state.

In 1811 he was married, and was elected to Congress — two great events in his life. Henry Clay, as Speaker,

immediately put Calhoun on an important committee. He quickly sounded a bugle call to war, declaring that it was the duty of "Congress to call forth the patriotism and resources of the country."

During the War of 1812 he worked hard in Congress for the success of the American Army.

Soon after the war was over, Monroe became president and made Calhoun Secretary of War. He found the



THE HOME AND OFFICE OF CALHOUN, AT FORT HILL, SOUTH CAROLINA

office in the utmost confusion, but by hard and careful work, he left it a model for future secretaries.

So far he had been legislator, congressman, and Secretary of War. Other honors followed. He was twice vice-president, for many years United States Senator, and once in later life Secretary of State. Few men have held so many high offices, or filled them so well.

175. Calhoun favors nullification. In 1828 Calhoun wrote a famous paper called the "South Carolina"

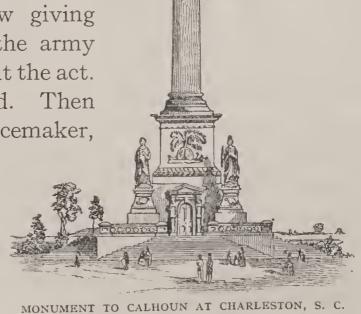
Exposition." In this he told the people of South Carolina there would always be a difference between the North and the South. The southern people, using slave labor, would be chiefly farmers. The Northern people, using free labor, would be largely manufacturers. Therefore laws that helped build up manufacturing and not farming would help the North and injure the South. Congress, he said, had no right to pass such one-sided laws. If it did, a Southern State could "nullify" them. This meant forbid their enforcement in its boundaries. Under his leadership South Carolina nullified the tariffs of 1828 and 1832. This decision was to take effect February 1, 1833, provided the United States did not do something before

President Jackson warned the citizens of South Carolina against the men who had led them to take this step. He hinted that the tariff would be collected by the use of force, if necessary. Congress passed a law giving him the right to use the army and the navy to carry out the act.

War seemed at hand. Then

that time to lower the tariff.

Clay, the great peacemaker, presented his Compromise Tariff. Both sides accepted it, and the danger passed. We have seen how Clay rushed his Compromise MONUMENT From a way.



MONUMENT TO CALHOUN AT CHARLESTON, S. C. From a photograph of the monument, which was designed by A. E. Harnisch

176. Opposed to the Abolitionists. The people who wished to do away with slavery immediately were called Abolitionists. The Abolitionists stirred Calhoun deeply by petitions in favor of abolishing slavery in the District of Columbia. He believed this was only their first step in a fight on slavery in the southern states. If these slaves were freed suddenly, he thought the South would be ruined.

In his defense of the South he even said that slavery was a "positive good." This was not the view of most southern men and women. They believed that, if allowed to work this matter for themselves, the southern people would in time find a way to get rid of slavery safely.

eager to see more southern states in the Union. He helped to get Texas in. When the war with Mexico ended he insisted that the new territory which we got should be open to slavery. He was not satisfied with Clay's great Compromise of 1850 and opposed it. He was too ill to speak, and a friend read his address to a hushed and listening Senate. He declared that the Union was in danger because the Abolitionists had stirred up strife. He wanted all agitation against slavery stopped. In the second place, he wanted an equal division of territory between the North and the South. "If you of the North will not do this, then let our southern states separate, and depart in peace."

"Having faithfully done my duty to the best of my ability, both to the Union and my section . . . I shall have the consolation . . . that I am free from all responsibility."

On March 31, 1850, he breathed his last words: "The South! The poor South! God knows what will become of her!"

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Clay's father was a Baptist preacher. Young Henry went to school in a log cabin, and rode his horse to mill with a rope bridle. 2. He studied law, and went to Lexington, Kentucky, to practice. 3. Clay won his way to the hearts of the people; was elected to the House of Representatives for a great many years. 4. He favored the War of 1812; induced Congress to pass the Missouri Compromise and the Compromise Tariff Law of 1833. 5. Clay ran again and again for president. He was author of the great Compromise of 1850.

6. Webster was not a strong child, played in the woods, and read books. 7. He was graduated at Dartmouth, taught school, studied law, and was opposed to the War of 1812. 8. Webster replied to Hayne, opposed the nullification of South Carolina, and was made Secretary of State by Harrison. 9. Supported Clay's Compromise of 1850, and was made

Secretary of State by Fillmore.

10. John C. Calhoun was born in South Carolina, and studied law. 11. He went to Congress, favored the War of 1812, and was afterward made Secretary of War. 12. Calhoun thought that a state had the right to nullify an act of Congress. 13. He opposed the Abolitionists and the Compromise of 1850.

Study Questions. 1. Who was the "mill boy of the Slashes"? 2. Name some of our great men besides Clay who loved books. 3. What could Clay do better than the other boys? 4. What help did he get from a great judge? 5. Why did Henry Clay form a debating club? 6. Where was Ashland? 7. Why was Clay so well liked? 8. What is a Speaker of the House of Representatives? 9. What did Clay do in stirring up the war spirit? 10. Why did Clay speak for the Missouri Compromise? 11. WhatwastheCompromise Tariff? 12. Why call Clay a peacemaker? 13. Did Henry Clay ever run for President? 14. What was the Compromise offered by Clay to the United States Senate in 1850? 15. Picture the scene when Clay made his last great speech.

16. Who was Webster? 17. Why did he play in the woods? 18. What proof that he loved books too? 19. Why were Daniel Webster's feelings hurt at Exeter? 20. Why did students like Webster? 21. How did he reward his parents for sending him to college? 22. What was Webster's view of the War of 1812? 23. Picture Webster in 1830. 24. Was Webster in favor of nullification? 25. Quote something from his speech in reply to Hayne. 26. Do you think Harrison selected the best man for Secretary of State? 27. Why did his friends in the North blame Webster for his Seventh of March speech? 28. How were Webster's last days affected by public opinion?

29. Who was Calhoun and what did his reading and his roaming in the woods and fields do for him? 30. Where did he go to college and when did he reach Congress? 31. What position did he take in the War of 1812? 32. What office did President Monroe give him? 33. What other high offices did Calhoun hold? 34. What effect had the "South Carolina Exposition"? 35. What did South Carolina do? 36. How was a clash averted? 37. What did Calhoun say of the Abolitionists? 38. What did he say of the Union? 39. What did he say of slavery? 40. What was Calhoun's position on the Compromise of 1850? 41. What were his last words? When did he die?

Suggested Readings. HENRY CLAY: Wright, Children's Stories of American Progress, 159-178; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 145–155; Anderson, United States Reader, 281–285; Frost, The Mill Boy of the Slashes.

Daniel Webster: Baldwin, Four Great Americans, 125-186; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 37-48; Hart, How Our Grandfathers Lived, 341-344; Bolton, Famous Ameri-

can Statesmen, 177-229.

JOHN C. CALHOUN: Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 140-144; Rogers, The True Henry Clay, 248-254.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE PRESERVER OF THE UNION

A POOR BOY BECOMES A GREAT MAN

Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809. His parents were so poor that they hardly knew that they were poor. When he was seven years old, his family crossed the Ohio River and settled in Indiana. There they found a place in the deep, dark forest, in the southern part of the state, and began to build a cabin home. Abe was an industrious little fellow and worked hard to help to build it. It was not much of a house—only fourteen feet square. One side was left out and here the fire was built. It was not very warm in winter and not very cool in summer. The hard ground was the

The family were living in the cabin when Abe's mother sickened and died. He was broken-hearted. She had

taught him what little he knew. Her last words to him were: "Try to live as I have taught you and to love your Heavenly Father."

Many years after, when he became famous,



THE BIRTHPLACE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN

he said: "All that I am or hope to be, I owe to my angel mother." She was put in a coffin roughly cut

out of logs and laid to rest in a corner of the clearing. Years afterward a good man put over the grave a stone



THE GRAVE OF NANCY HANKS LINCOLN

with this inscription:

''Nancy Hanks
Lincoln, the mother
of President Lincoln,
died October 5, A. D.
1818, aged 35 years."

A year later his father went back to Kentucky to look about for a wife. He

found a widow named Sarah Bush Johnston, and married her. He had known her before he met Nancy Hanks. She was thrifty and industrious and her bedding and other household goods filled a four-horse wagon.

Before winter came she made her husband put a good floor and a door and windows in the cabin. She took charge of Abe and his sister, and made them "look a little more human." She put good clothes on the children and put them to sleep in comfortable beds.

179. Lincoln educates himself. Schools were scarce in that new country, and Abe never had more than a year at school. His stepmother encouraged him in every way to study at home.

John Hanks, a boy brought up with Lincoln, says: "When Abe and I returned to the house from work, he would go to the cupboard, snatch a piece of corn bread, sit down, take a book, cock his legs up as high as his head, and read." He read, wrote, and ciphered all the time.

Young Lincoln was soon able to do a "man's work," although only a boy. He was strong and powerful, and a

great favorite. In that family of brothers, sisters, and cousins, his good-natured jokes and stories kept peace. Abe was the great story-teller of the family.

At the age of nineteen Lincoln reached his full height of six feet four inches. By that time he had read every book he could find, and could "spell down" the whole country. "He could sink an axe deeper into the wood than any man I ever saw," said a neighbor.

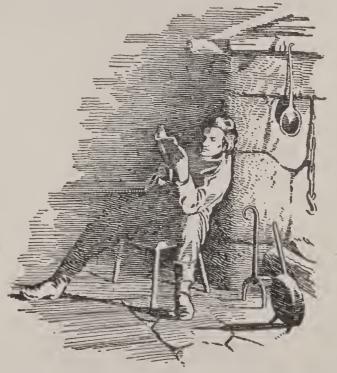
When Abe was twenty-one, the entire family started for Illinois. Along forest roads, and across muddy prairies, for two weeks they drove their wagon until they came to the Sangamon River.

They built a cabin on the north fork of the river. With the help of John Hanks, young Lincoln plowed fifteen acres, planted it in corn, and split the rails from the tall

walnut trees on the ground and fenced it.

ness man. The next year he was hired to take a flatboat to New Orleans. The boat was loaded with hogs, pork, and corn. The wages of the trip were fifty cents a day, and twenty dollars besides for each man.

They "poled" and rowed their slow way down the Ohio and the Mississippi. At New Orleans, Lincoln



LINCOLN READING BY THE LIGHT OF THE OPEN FIRE

After a painting by Eastman Johnson

first saw a slave auction. As he turned away he said to a friend: "If ever I get a chance to hit that thing, I'll

hit it hard." He did not then dream of the mighty blow he would one day strike.

After his return from New Orleans, he became a clerk in a store. One day a woman gave Lincoln six cents too much. That very evening he walked several miles to find her and give back the money. At another time Lincoln found that he had not given a woman as much tea as she paid for. He went in search of her and gave her the rest of the tea.

About this time Lincoln joined a company of soldiers who were going to the Black Hawk War. An Indian chief named Black Hawk was on the warpath. The whole frontier was up in arms against him and his band of braves.

Lincoln was well pleased when nearly all the men in his company walked over and stood by his side. This



LINCOLN SPLITTING RAILS TO FENCE IN THEIR FARM

was their way of saying they wanted him for captain. No election in later days gave him greater pleasure.

Little fighting was done by Lincoln's company, but sitting by the camp-fires in the evening, he became famous as a story-teller, and he made many friends.

181. Makes a success in politics. On his return from the war, though he was only twenty-three years old, he

became a candidate for the state legislature, but was defeated.

A little later he was again a candidate. This time he won. After the election, he said to a friend: "Did you vote for me?" "I did," replied the man." Then you must lend me two hundred dollars." Lincoln needed a suit of clothes and money to pay the expense of traveling in a stage coach to the capital!



WHALE-OIL LAMP
From Lincoln's log
cabin

Lincoln was reëlected to the legislature three times. He generally got more votes than other men on the ticket because the people liked his quaint sayings and his unpretending manner.

In the meantime, after three or four years of study, he was given a license to practice law. He made it a rule never to take a case which he believed to be wrong. He was a successful lawyer, but the road to fame by way of the law was a slow one. It gave Lincoln, however, a chance to engage in politics, as we have already seen, and in politics his success was great.

He liked "stump speaking." He liked to go about the country from one speaking place to another, or to travel from one county to another to meet the different sessions of the courts. He spoke what he believed to be the truth. He was always in earnest, and made his hearers feel that he was sincere.

In 1846 the Whigs of Springfield, where he was then living, put Lincoln forward for Congress. He was elected. He was not in favor of the war with Mexico, then going on, and was not selected to run again. Lincoln returned

to Springfield, and began the practice of law with greater success than ever before.

In 1854 a great opportunity came. In that year Senator Douglas of Illinois had Congress pass an act that repealed the old Missouri Compromise. This threw the territories Kansas and Nebraska open to slavery. It raised a storm of indignation in the North.

Douglas spoke at the state fair, held in Springfield. He tried to explain why he favored the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. Lincoln made a speech four hours in length, ably answering the argument of Douglas. This speech made him the champion of the anti-slavery people in the state.



LINCOLN SPEAKING IN THE STATE CONVENTION

The same question was fought out by them at Peoria a little later. People began to talk of Lincoln as the next

senator. More and more, popular opinion in the state began to turn toward Lincoln.

Accordingly, in 1858, at Springfield, the Republicans in convention named Lincoln for senator. He made a speech to the Republicans, in which he said that this country could not remain half slave and half free—that it must become all slave or all free.

This called every man to face a new question. Some friends of Lincoln pleaded with him not to say that the country could not remain half slave and half free. "I had rather be defeated with that expression in my speech than to be victorious without it," said Lincoln.

182. The Lincoln-Douglas debates. Douglas attacked this speech, and Lincoln challenged him to hold several joint debates before the people of Illinois. Seven debates were arranged, in which Douglas insisted upon opening and closing four.

The people of Illinois were mainly farmers in 1858. They traveled long distances to hear these giants debate the question of slavery. Some of them were several days coming and going — in wagons, on horseback, or on foot. The newspapers in the larger cities sent men to listen to the debates, and take down the words used by Lincoln and Douglas. The editors knew the people were anxious to read what had been said about slavery.

"Can the people of a Territory, in any lawful way, against the wish of any citizen . . . exclude slavery?" Lincoln asked. "Yes," said Douglas. That was a fatal answer. For, by this answer, Douglas lost the support of the Democrats of the South, although he held the Democrats of Illinois. He could still be senator, but he could never be President.

These debates made Lincoln widely known. He was invited to speak in Ohio, New York, and New England.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

In May, 1860, the Republicans of Illinois met in state convention. Lincoln was there. The people picked him up, lifted him over their heads, and placed him on the platform. The cheering was loud. Just at this moment John Hanks came into the hall carrying two fence rails, with the Stars and Stripes mounted between them, bearing in large words the following: "Taken from a lot made From a rare photograph taken by Alexander by Abraham Lincoln and Hesler in Chicago, 1860, and loaned by the Chicago Photogravure Company, who own the original

John Hanks in the Sangamon Bottom in the year

1830." The people stood up and cheered, and threw their hats high and shouted for Lincoln, the "railsplitter." He made a speech. The convention then and there named him as the choice of the Republican party of Illinois for the next president of the United States.

183. Lincoln becomes President. A few weeks later, Abraham Lincoln was nominated in Chicago by the National Convention of the Republican party for the presidency. The debates between Lincoln and Douglas split the Democratic party into a northern and a southern wing.

Douglas was nominated by the northern wing and Breckenridge by the Southern wing. This division in the Democratic party resulted in the election of Lincoln to the presidency, in November, 1860.

During the fall and winter, seven southern states left the Union and set up a government which they called the "Confederate States of America." They had their government all in running order before Lincoln left Springfield.

In February, 1861, Lincoln said good-by to the people of Springfield and started for Washington to take his seat as president. Along the route there were cheers, bonfires, and military parades with miles of marching men. At Philadelphia, Lincoln raised a flag over Independence Hall. He made a touching speech in regard to the men of the Revolution who had sat in that hall, and pledged



THE CONFEDERATE STATES

himself to abide by the principles of the Declaration of Independence.

On March 4, with soldiers guarding the capitol, Lincoln read his inaugural address and took the oath of office. This speech was listened to with the greatest interest. It was now plain to everbody that Lincoln meant to fight, if fighting were necessary to save the Union.

In April, Confederates fired on Fort Sumter in Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. After brave resistance, Colonel Anderson and his men surrendered the fort to the Confederate troops.

Lincoln immediately sent forth the call for seventy-five



THE STATUE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN IN LINCOLN PARK, CHICAGO

By Augustus St. Gaudens

thousand men. War had come—a war between the North and the South. Four more states left the Union and joined the "Confederate States." Men from Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri fought on each side. Lincoln declared it a war to save the Union and not a war to get rid of slavery. The great majority in the North were willing to fight for the Union which Jackson, Webster, and Clay had done so much to save.

But the slavery question kept coming up. The Confederates used the slaves to build forts, cook for the army, and do

other work. Thus the slave took the place of the white soldier. Other slaves raised food supplies and cared

for the women. In this way the slaves were used constantly to help in the fight against the Union.

The time had come to destroy slavery. Lincoln now saw that by freeing the slaves he could strike a heavy blow at the Confederacy. So as the Commander in chief of the Union armies he issued the Proclamation of Emancipation, January 1, 1863.

The war, however, continued more than two years longer. The long list of dead and wounded on both sides saddened Lincoln. Day by day the lines in his kindly face grew deeper.

Finally the news came that General Grant had hammered General Lee's lines to pieces, and that Jefferson Davis and his cabinet were leaving Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy.

Grant was pursuing Lee's army. He overtook it, and on April 8 offered terms of surrender. Lee accepted these terms. The President's heart was filled with gratitude that on either side no more lives were to be sacrificed.

184. President Lincoln assassinated. The evening of April 14, 1865, Lincoln went to Ford's Theater in Washington to rest body and mind. As he sat in a box, John Wilkes Booth, an actor, shot him in the back of the head. Booth sprang upon the stage, flourished his revolver, and escaped.

Abraham Lincoln died the next day. Thus the nation lost a great leader. Truly he was a man "with malice toward none, with charity for all."

Many monuments have been built to honor the name of this great man. One of the most celebrated is the St. Gaudens statue in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Lincoln, born of poor parents in the state of Kentucky, went to Indiana when seven years of age. 2. Helped build a cabin. 3. Lincoln lost his mother, and his father married again. 4. His stepmother took good care of Abe and his sister. 5. Lincoln had little schooling, but read a few books very thoroughly. 6. He was very powerful at nineteen and had read so much he could "spell down" the whole countryside. 7. The family moved to Illinois, and Abe was hired to take a flatboat down the Mississippi. 8. He saw a slave auction at New Orleans. q. Lincoln was elected captain in the Black Hawk War; elected to the legislature for four terms. 10. He studied law and was elected to Congress. 11. Attacked Douglas for the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. 12. Lincoln and Douglas held joint debates. 13. Nominated for the presidency by the Republicans in convention at Chicago. 14. Douglas displeased the South and the Democratic party was split. 15. Lincoln was elected president, the South seceded, and Douglas stood by the Union. 16. Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation. 17. Lee surrendered to Grant. 18. Lincoln was assassinated soon after the close of the war. 19. Many monuments have been built to honor Lincoln's name.

Study Questions. 1. Describe Lincoln's early surroundings. 2. Picture Abe and his sister. 3. How old was Abe when his mother died? 4. What did he owe to his mother? 5. What did Abe's new mother do for him? 6. Was Abe fond of reading? 7. Why was Abe liked in the family? 8. How tall was Lincoln? How old was he when the family started for Illinois? 9. What did he do soon after going to Illinois? 10. What did he see in New Orleans that was new to him? 11. Prove Lincoln was honest. 12. Prove that the men of the countryside had confidence in Lincoln. 13. How old was Lincoln when he ran for the legislature? 14. Tell the story of Lincoln's experiences in running for the legislature. 15. What was his success as a lawyer? 16. Why did Lincoln love public speaking? 17. Why was Lincoln not elected to Congress again? 18. How did Lincoln become the champion speaker against Douglas? 19. What was the effect of the debate? 20. What new declaration did Lincoln make in his Springfield speech? 21. Why did Lincoln challenge Douglas? 22. How did Lincoln become

widely known? 23. What was the fatal question put to Douglas by Lincoln? 24. What did Douglas lose by his answer? 25. Picture the scene in the state convention of 1860. 26. What was the effect of the Lincoln-Douglas debates on the Democratic party? 27. Why did this result in Lincoln's election to the presidency? 28. Give an account of the demonstrations made in honor of Lincoln. 29. Who fired the first shot in the War between the States, and where? 30. How many slave-holding states remained loyal to the Union? 31. What kind of war did Lincoln make of the War between the States? 32. Why would the question of slavery keep coming up? 33. How did the Proclamation of Emancipation affect the strength of the Confederates? 34. What did Lincoln think of when Lee surrendered? 35. Tell the story of Lincoln's assassination. 36. How did the nation feel over Lincoln's death? 37. Where has a celebrated monument been erected in Lincoln's honor?

Suggested Readings. Abraham Lincoln: Baldwin, Four Great Americans, 187–246; McMurry, Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley, 170–184; Wright, Children's Stories of American Progress, 159–178, 299–327; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 193–210; Hart and Stevens, Romance of the Civil War, 1–112; Bolton, Lives of Poor Boys Who Became Famous, 342–267; Mabie, Heroes Every Child Should Know, 309–319; Nicolay, Boys' Life of Abraham Lincoln; Coffin, Abraham Lincoln; Southworth, Builders of Our Country, Vol. II, 186–217.

JEFFERSON DAVIS

PRESIDENT OF THE CONFEDERACY

- 185. Two famous Kentucky boys. With only a year's difference in their ages there were born on two small Kentucky farms, in the early years of the last century, two boys who were both to become famous. They were Jefferson Davis and Abraham Lincoln. Lincoln's father moved to the Northwest. He settled in Illinois, and there Lincoln grew up to become the leader of the North. Davis' father took him down into Mississippi. Here he grew up and became in time the leader of the South.
- was then a new country. The early settlers lived simply on their farms. Every day young Davis and his little sister walked two miles to a country schoolhouse made of logs. When he was seven years old some of his father's friends came by on their way to Kentucky. Young Davis was sent with them so he could go to a better school. It was a great journey. There were no railroads and the party traveled on horseback. Davis and another boy his age had ponies to ride. Day after day they rode through woods and past farms that were all new to them. At night they stopped at some farmhouse, or, better still, camped in the woods by a spring.

In Kentucky he studied for two years, and made many new friends. Then as the home schools were getting better he went back to Mississippi. By this time the first steamboats were running on the Ohio and the Mississippi rivers. On one of them he made the journey. It was all new and interesting to him. At each stop people came on board to see the boat without oars or pole or sail.

187. Learning to be a soldier. It was interesting to go from one school to another in this way and see the

country too, but it led to nothing. So Davis was happy when one day the news came that he could go to the great school at West Point, New York. Here the United States trained young men to be army officers. West Point was not then the beautiful place that it is now. Davis and two other men had to share a small room together. There were three chairs, a table, and mattresses on the floor. They brought water from a spring. It was a soldier's life. But



JEFFERSON DAVIS

From a portrait painted by Browne,
now in the Westmoreland Club,
Richmond, Virginia

Davis was a born soldier and liked it. He studied, he drilled, he had some fun, and he made friends. Once at least he risked his life for others. By accident a bundle of cotton caught fire in a room filled with powder. While the others ran away, Davis quickly caught up the burning cotton, and threw it out before the fire could spread.

when he graduated and became a proud young lieutenant in the United States Army. Into the Northwest he was sent to keep the Indians and the new settlers at peace. The work was hard and full of danger. He cut logs in the great forest to build forts. He and his men paddled up rivers where no white men yet lived, and were chased by

Indians in their canoes. Finally Black Hawk, an Indian chief, led his "braves" against the whites. It was a hard fight, but the whites won. Black Hawk was taken down the river on a boat. At every stop the settlers wanted to crowd in and look at him. But Davis knew how he felt and kept them all out. It was the kindness of one brave man to another who was in his power.

189. A Mississippi planter. Davis was now twentyeight years old. He was getting on well, but he had other plans for his life. He resigned from the army and married the daughter of Colonel Zachary Taylor, the man who later became a famous general and a president of the United States. Davis then went with his bride to Mississippi and settled down to a southern planter's life. He was near his brother, who had now become a rich man. For a few months all was happy and peaceful. Then his wife was taken ill. In spite of all he could do she died. It was a sad blow to him. He sought comfort in hard work. There was much to do. New fields had to be cleared and plowed. Crops had to be planted and cared for. Houses must be built. Slaves had to be trained for all the work. In a word, the whole big plantation, with all its people, required his guidance. It was a heavy care, but it had its pleasures. He liked the open air and the feeling of independence. Sometimes there was hunting, and now and then there were visits from other planters. His brother was his closest friend. In the evenings they read good books, magazines, and papers. Often they had long talks about politics and questions of the day.

This was the life of many men in the South at that time. The planters were the leaders throughout the South, and took an active part in public life. So Davis, too, in time was drawn into it, and soon became a mem-

ber of Congress. He married again, a young woman from his own state, Miss Varina Howell, of Mississippi.

Mexico. Then came the war with Mexico. It grew out of an old quarrel between the Americans in Texas and the Mexicans across



HOME OF JEFFERSON DAVIS AT RICHMOND, VIRGINIA From a photograph by Eugene J. Hall

their border. Texas had at one time been a part of Mexico. Settlers began to come into it from the United States. This alarmed the Mexicans, who feared they would soon lose control of it. So they did all they could to keep our settlers out. When they failed, they treated the settlers so unjustly that they rose in revolt. Under Sam Houston Texas won its independence. Finally the United States took it in as a state. Then Mexico and the United States disagreed about the boundary. Each sent troops there. The Mexicans attacked our men in the land that we claimed. Congress replied by declaring that "war exists by act of Mexico herself."

191. Davis becomes a soldier again. Great was the excitement in our country. A regiment of men in Mississippi chose Davis as its colonel. His fighting blood was stirred and he accepted. Success came to him quickly. In the famous battle of Buena Vista the Mexicans seemed about to win, but Davis threw his brave

Mississippians into position like a big letter "V" and drove them back. It saved the day and gave our men the victory.

- 192. Senator Davis. Davis was now the hero of Mississippi, and soon went to Washington as senator from his state. He became a leader there; for he was honest, he spoke the truth, and he feared no man. Men listened when he spoke, and his fame spread through the South.
- 193. Secretary of War. When a new president came into office he looked around for a good man to be his Secretary of War. Why not Davis? He had the army training, he had shown himself a brilliant officer. He was already a proved leader of men. He was honest and able. So President Pierce made him his Secretary of War. What a rapid rise! He was not quite forty-five years old. Yet in that time he had risen from a poor boy to a well-to-do planter, had gained a good education, had won honor in two wars, had been senator, and was now a cabinet member. Little had he dreamed in his plain room at West Point that he should one day shape the plans for the army at Washington. Yet here he was, and he set to work to build up a fine army. He made better rules for it. He gave it better guns. He built better forts. He pled for better railroads and dirt roads throughout the country.
- 194. A defender of Southern rights. His term in the cabinet came to an end after four years. As soon as he was free, Mississippi sent him back to the Senate. Here he again took his place as leader among the southern men. He spoke in a clear voice and right to the point. His eyes flashed and there was a ring in the tones in which he boldly demanded justice for the South. Should not

Southerners have an equal chance in the new lands of the West? They had helped in all the fights and hard struggles that won them. Who could now keep them from coming with their slaves to settle in this common territory?

195. Southern states secede. In the Northern states many men felt differently. They said, "Let us keep all slavery out of the new lands." They formed a new party and elected Lincoln president. In that party also were some who were eager to do away with slavery in the southern states as soon as they could.

It was an exciting time in the South when the news spread that Lincoln had been elected. What did it mean? Would southern rights any longer be safe in the Union? Many thought not, and one after another the southern states withdrew. It was a trying time for Davis. Many ties bound him to the Union. He had followed its flag as a soldier on the battlefield. He had taken part in its government. He had tried hard to find some way to settle the differences between the North and the South. He earnestly wished to save the Union if the South could be made to feel safe in it. He had found no way. He believed that his state had done right to withdraw. He felt his greatest duty was to stand by it. He told the Senate all this in a frank and manly speech, said good-by to them, and went back to his home in Mississippi.

r96. President of the Confederacy. What would the southern states do, now they had left the old Union? The answer came quickly. Montgomery, Alabama, was in the center of the South. Here hurried men from the other southern states to form a southern union. Never

before had the little city seen such busy times or so many famous men. What should the new nation be called? Quickly they decided, and named it the "Confederate States." Of course there must be a president of it. Who should it be? Many were mentioned, but the choice was soon made. It was Davis. He had strong claims. He was a trained soldier, he had been Secretary of War, he had been the leader of the South in the Senate. People knew he was honest, patriotic, and able. They felt that he was the right man. So when he reached the city a great crowd met him, and he was presented to them with the words: "The man and the hour have met."

The next day he stood on the porch of the capitol of Alabama and took the oath as president of the Confed-



MONUMENT TO JEFFERSON, DAVIS AT RICHMOND, VIRGINIA From a pholograph by Ewing Galloway

eracy. It was a solemn moment. A great crowd covered the hillside in front of him. He raised his hand and swore that, God helping him, he would do his best to make the Confederacy a success. And the people cheered and went home. Some thought there would be no war, but Davis knew better and felt the heavy burden that now lay on him.

197. A war president. War soon came—a long and terrible war. The

capital was moved from Montgomery to Richmond, Virginia. Here Davis lived as president of the Confederacy

during four long years. No one ever had more cares to trouble him, or tried more earnestly to keep his oath and make the Confederacy a success. On battlefield after battlefield the Southern soldiers fought with a bravery never surpassed. Southern generals did all that skill could do. At home, Southern women, with the help of old men and young boys, ran the farms and guided business with wonderful heroism. But the North was too strong in numbers and in resources. At last the end came. One Sunday as Davis sat in church a messenger touched him on the shoulder. He quickly went out to learn what had happened. There was a message from General Lee. He could hold the lines no longer. That night the Northern soldiers would be in the city. What hurrying there was! What grief! What hasty planning to fight if possible somewhere else! That night Richmond fell.

rog. Davis' last days. The fall of its capital was the real end of the Confederacy. Some of the armies struggled desperately on. Soon they too had to surrender. Flesh and blood could resist no longer. Davis was made a prisoner and kept in a cell at Fort Monroe for many weary months. His health failed, but his spirit was not broken. He was a prisoner, but he had done to the best of his ability what he believed to be right, and his soul was untroubled. At length he was released. He traveled to various places in search of health. Finally he went back to Mississippi. His lands were gone, his property destroyed. He lived quietly near the seashore in a home that was left him by an old friend. He died in 1889, beloved by his own people, the "Leader of the Lost Cause."

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Jefferson Davis, though born in Kentucky, spent most of his life in Mississippi. 2. He attended school near home, and later in Kentucky. 3. Desiring to become a soldier, he entered West Point. 4. After becoming an officer, he fought against the Indians in the Northwest. 5. Later he resigned from the army, married, and settled down to the life of a southern planter. 6. He was elected to Congress, and then as a colonel fought bravely in the Mexican War, afterward returning to Congress as senator. 7. Under President Pierce he made an able Secretary of War. 8. When the South seceded, he left the senate, where he was then serving, to become president of the Confederacy. 9. After the war was over, he finally settled down to live quietly in his old home state of Mississippi. 10. He was called the "Leader of the Lost Cause."

Study Questions. 1. Describe Davis' early schooling. 2. How did he make the trip back to Kentucky? 3. What was his ambition, and how did he prepare himself for his life work? 4. How did he serve his country in the field before the War between the States? 5. What other positions did he hold? 6. Where did he settle down, and what was his occupation? 7. What was he doing when the War between the States broke out? 8. Why was he well fitted to act as president of the Confederacy? 9. Tell the story of his life after the close of the War between the States. 10. What did his own people call him?

Suggested Readings. Jefferson Davis: Varina Howell Davis, Jefferson Davis, A Memoir; Life and Reminiscences of Jefferson Davis by Eminent Men of His Time; Landon Knight, The Real Jefferson Davis; F. H. Alfriend, Life of Jefferson Davis.

THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES

ROBERT EDWARD LEE

199. A young Virginian. Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia in 1807, with the best blood of the Cavaliers in his veins. His father was "Light Horse Harry" Lee, the famous cavalryman of the Revolution.

As young Lee grew up, he followed in the footsteps of his great father. He went to school at Alexandria, George Washington's old town, and prepared for West Point. He was a hard-working student at West Point and a fine soldier. During the entire four years he got no demerits. Everybody liked the handsome, dignified

young man. He graduated near the head of his class, and became an engineer in the United t ates Army.

While a boy he made a visit at Arlington, across the Potomac from Washington. This was the home of George Washington Parke Custis. Here young Lee met Mary Custis. The early friendship grew into love. She became his wife two years after he left West Point, and Arlington became their beautiful home.



ROBERT EDWARD LEE
From a portrait painted by Browne, now in the Westmoreland Club,
Richmond, Virginia

200. In the United States Army. In the war with Mexico, he earned honor and fame. General Scott

admired his skill and courage and praised him highly. When the Mexican War was over, and peace had come,



ARLINGTON HOUSE, THE HOME OF GENERAL LEE

Lee was put in charge of the Academy at West Point. While there he improved the discipline and the course of study at that

famous military school. After three years, Lee resigned his position at West Point and went to fight the Indians on the frontier. Soon came the great War between the States. Lee loved the Union. He had fought beneath its flag. He had many friends in its army. But he felt that his highest duty was to his native state.

201. Goes with his state. When Virginia followed other slave states out of the Union and into the Confederacy, Lee went with his state. Before he took this step, President Lincoln sent a friend to offer him a promotion in the army if he would fight for the Union. Lee replied: "How could I take part against my native state, or raise my hand against my relatives, my children, and my home?"

Virginia put him at the head of her troops, and when she joined the Confederacy, he was made one of her generals. Early in 1862 he was made military adviser to the Confederate president, Jefferson Davis. When General Joseph E. Johnston was wounded at the battle of Fair Oaks, General Lee was given charge of the army defending Richmond.

202. Lee wins victory after victory. The change was quickly seen. Although McClellan, the Union general, had a much larger army, Lee immediately attacked it in a seven days' battle, compelling McClellan to retreat. The attack upon Richmond had failed.

Lee turned and hurled his army with great fury against another northern general, Pope, defeated him, and threatened Washington. The excitement in the capital was great.

Flushed with victory, General Lee decided to lead his army into Maryland. Supplies for the army were



LEE'S ARMY ON THE MARCH TO INVADE MARYLAND

abundant. But the people of Maryland did not join his army as he had expected. The bloody battle of Antietam

was the result of this invasion. General Lee slowly withdrew his troops across the Potomac into Virginia.

In December he fought and defeated the Union army at Fredericksburg. Early in 1863 Lee again defeated the Union forces, with great slaughter, at Chancellorsville. Here Lee lost his most brilliant and dashing general, "Stonewall" Jackson.

After resting his troops and gathering reënforcements, Lee made a dash through Maryland into Pennsylvania. Washington and the North were full of excitement, but a great Union army was now hurrying to meet him.

203. The battle of Gettysburg. The two armies met at Gettysburg, and there for three days was fought the

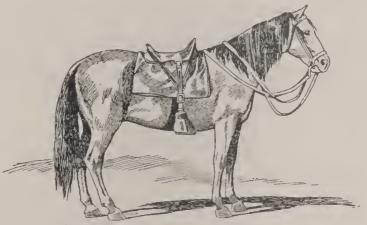


PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG
This heroic assault marked the turn of the Confederate tide

greatest battle of the War between the States. On the last day occurred Pickett's famous charge. Fifteen

thousand Southern veterans, led by General George E. Pickett, with bayonets gleaming, charged across the

valley—more than a mile in width—right up to the muzzle of the Union guns. The slaughter was fearful. Finally the Confederates retreated. More than fifty thousand men, on both



"TRAVELER," GENERAL LEE'S HORSE

sides, were killed, wounded, and missing at Gettysburg.

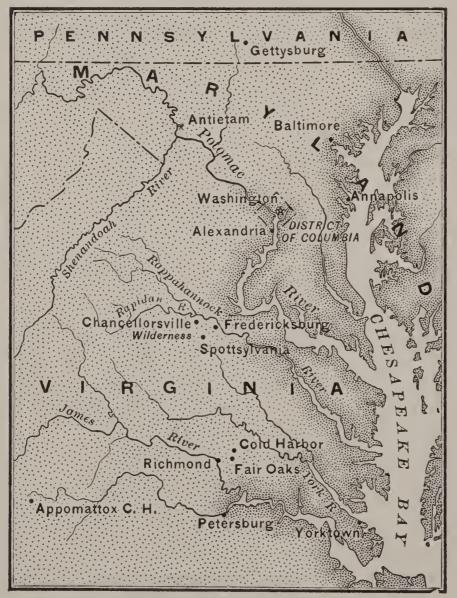
204. Facing a powerful army. General Lee crossed the Potomac, and never again invaded the North. Little was done against him until General Grant, in 1864, took command of all the Union forces, which now numbered nearly one hundred and twenty thousand men. Against this powerful army General Lee could oppose not more than seventy thousand.

Then came a long and terrible struggle. For a year battle followed battle. Lee did all that a great general could do. Again and again he drove back Grant's men. But in the end Grant's larger army pressed him back to Richmond.

troops were wearing out. There were no more to take their places. Food and clothing became scarce. So many of the Confederates states had been overrun by the Union troops that supplies of all kinds were hard to get. Before this, Southern women had been busy knitting socks and preparing other supplies for the army, but now it was hard to find material for supplies. The time must

soon come when the Confederacy could hold out no longer.

At last its capital, Richmond, fell. April 2, 1865, was Sunday. President Davis was at church. A message was handed to him. He quickly left the building. Lee had told him that Richmond must be given up that night. All were busy getting ready. At nightfall Lee's soldiers left the city. In the morning Grant's army came in.



SCENE OF WAR AROUND WASHINGTON AND RICHMOND

Lee's army was surrounded at Appomattox Court House. General Lee and General Grant met at a farmh ouse and agreed upon the terms of surrender. April 9, 1865. It was a trying time for

General Lee. He went back "to break the sad news to the brave troops he had

so long commanded. . . . They pressed up to him, anxious to touch his person or even his horse."

With a voice filled with deep emotion, he said to his soldiers: "We have fought through the war together; I have done the best I could for you. My heart is too full to say more!" And then, in silence, he rode on to his headquarters near by and passed alone into his tent.

Morning brought the final parting with his loyal army. Surrounded by a throng of sorrowing soldiers, General Lee mounted his faithful gray horse, "Traveler," Then, the last sad farewells said, he rode slowly away to his home in Richmond.

In a short time, General Lee was elected president of Washington College, now Washington and Lee University, at Lexington, Virginia. Many offers of help came to him at this time, but he declined them all. Other offers to engage in business and make a fortune came to him, but he refused them all, preferring his quiet duties as a college president.

General Lee died in Lexington in 1870. A monument to the memory of this great man has been erected in Richmond, and likewise one in Lexington. Since the close of the War between the States, General Lee's fame as a noble man and a great soldier has grown steadily.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia, and went to school at Alexandria. 2. Went to West Point, won honors, and became an engineer in the United States Army. 3. Lee was in the Mexican War, and won praise from General Scott; took charge of West Point. 4. Followed Virginia into secession and was given command of her troops. 5. Given charge of the army defending Richmond, and began the seven days' fighting. 6. Defeated General Pope, invaded Maryland, and fought the Battle of Antietam. 7. General Lee won the battles of Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville, but failed at

Gettysburg. 8. Defended Richmond against Grant for nearly a year. 9. Lee accepted Grant's terms at Appomattox. 10. Accepted the presidency of Washington College. 11. Two monuments, one at Richmond and one at Lexington, have been erected to Lee's memory.

Study Questions. 1. What do you know of "Light Horse Harry"? 2. Tell the story of young Lee until he left West Point. 3. Tell of his promotion after leaving West Point. 4. What did Lee do for West Point? 5. Why did Lincoln think Lee would accept a promotion in the Union army? 6. What was Lee's reply? 7. What positions had he held when he became head at Fair Oaks? 8. What two victories led Lee to invade Maryland and what great battle was fought? Have you heard of this battle before? 9. What two victories led Lee to invade Pennsylvania? 10. Tell the story of Gettysburg. 11. What was the effect on Lee's army? 12. How could 70,000 men hold 120,000 at bay? 13. Tell the story of Lee's fighting during the next year. 14. Picture the condition of Lee's army in the spring of 1865. 15. Picture General Lee's farewell to his soldiers. 17. Tell the story of Lee after the war ceased. 18. Where have monuments been erected to his memory?

Suggested Readings. ROBERT E. LEE: Hale, Stories of War, 61-73, 119-149; Mabie, Heroes Every Child Should Know, 289-308; Magill, Stories from Virginia History, 162-172.

OTHER HEROES OF THE CIVIL WAR

ULYSSES S. GRANT

206. Grant, the great Union general. The rise to fame of Ulysses S. Grant was rapid. He had fought in the Mexican war and had risen to be a captain in the United States Army. But he had left the service. When the war began he was a clerk in a small city of Illinois. Four years later he received the surrender of Lee's gallant army and the War between the States was at an end.

Grant was called "the silent soldier." He spoke little and avoided everything showy. But he was cool and brave, and fought most stubbornly. At Vicksburg he first showed the world that he was a great soldier. At

Grant's men lay in the swamps across the river from Vicksburg. They were far away from other northern troops. Month after month Grant failed in his attempt to seize Vicksburg.

Every one thought that he should withdraw. But, on the contrary, Grant decided to cross the river to the Confederate side, leaving his supplies behind. Carrying only



ULYSSES S. GRANT From a pholograph taken in 1866 by F. Gutekunst, Philadelphia

its ammunition, his army marched against the southern troops. Grant saw that if the various bodies of

Confederates should join against him, he would be crushed. Accordingly he rushed his troops from one battle to another, defeating the various Confederate forces before they could unite, and driving them back to Vicksburg.

Just as one of these battles began an officer rode into camp with orders for Grant to withdraw his troops and march away from Vicksburg. Grant listened to the officer, then rode off to the fight leading his cheering men. He said afterwards: "I saw no more of the officer; I think not even to this day." He had decided to take Vicksburg, and not even orders to the contrary could turn him away.

Grant stayed before Vicksburg until that city fell. Lincoln needed such a man, and soon placed him over the whole Union army. In one of his great campaigns, Grant said: "I propose to fight it out along this line if it takes all summer." And he did "fight it out" through many fierce battles until the Southern armies were worn out and peace was restored.

After the war, General Grant was elected president of the United States, and served two terms. He later traveled around the world. He was a famous man, and everywhere he was received with respect and honor. In Riverside Park, New York, there is a great monument in his memory.

"STONEWALL" JACKSON

207. A Confederate general who would not yield. "Stonewall" Jackson won his name at Manassas, the first battle of the War between the States. Some of the Confederate troops were retreating, when one of their

generals saw that Jackson and his men still held their ground. He shouted, "Look at Jackson's brigade!

There it stands like a stone wall!" Jackson's example gave fresh courage to the wavering troops. They rallied and drove the Union forces from the field. From that day the gallant officer was known as "Stonewall" Jackson.

He was one of the most brilliant and successful generals of the war. Of his many fierce attacks none was better carried out than his last at the battle of Chancellorsville. Here Lee was opposed by a much larger Union army



THOMAS JONATHAN ("STONE-WALL") JACKSON

From a war-time photograph, taken on the field by Matthew B. Brady, in the collection of the War Department, Washington, D. C.

under General Hooker. While a part of the Confederate forces held their position in front of the Union troops, Jackson took about 20,000 men and quietly slipped away. Through the dense forest they marched around the flank of the Union army. They moved so silently that the Northern men were not aware of danger until rabbits and deer fled out of the woods through which Jackson's men were coming. Before the Union troops could form, soldiers in gray were upon them like a whirlwind. Jackson himself led his men, cheering them on. The battle resulted in a great victory for the Confederates.

In the evening Jackson was shot while at the front. His first thought was of the battle, and he said: "You must hold your ground." As he was dying he still

thought he was leading his men. His last words were: "Let us cross over the river and rest under the shade of the trees."

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. When the War between the States broke out, Grant was a clerk in a small town in Illinois. 2. Called "the silent soldier." 3. Besieged Vicksburg for many months, fighting many battles. 4. Defeated the Confederates by strategy and took Vicksburg. 5. Made commander in chief of the Union army. 6. After the war he was twice elected president of the United States 7. In Riverside Park, New York, there is a great monument in his memory.

8. Since the day of the Battle of Manassas, where Jackson's brigade held its ground against the Union soldiers and turned a rout into a victory, Jackson was known as "Stonewall" Jackson. 9. Jackson surprised the Union soldiers at Chancellorsville, and defeated them. 10. Jackson was in the battle of Chancellorsville.

Study Questions. 1. What was Grant doing when war broke out? 2. Where did he first distinguish himself as a soldier? 3. Tell how he defeated the Confederates at Vicksburg. 4. What was his reward? 5. Tell of his life after the close of the war. 6. For how many terms was he elected president?

7. Where and how did "Stonewall" Jackson win his title? 8. Tell the story of Jackson at Chancellorsville. 9. What

were Jackson's last words?

Suggested Readings. ULYSSES S. GRANT: Burton, Four American Patriots, 195–254; Brooks, Century Book of Famous Americans, 181–191; Hart and Stevens, Romance of the Civil War, 179–183; Hale, Stories of War, 21–29, 74–91, 92–118, 168–187, 226–264; Bolton, Famous American Statesmen, 307–360.

Stonewall Jackson: Addey, Stonewall Jackson, 13-30,

31-93, 94-133, 154-240.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT

THE TYPICAL AMERICAN

208. Theodore Roosevelt as a boy. Although the son of a rich man, Roosevelt both as boy and man was most democratic. One of his forefathers, Claas van Roosevelt, came from Holland to New York in the steerage of a sailing vessel, a lowly way to travel. This was long ago, before Peter Stuyvesant was governor of New Netherland.

Roosevelt's mother was a southern woman of great beauty. She was true to the South in the dark days of the War between the States; her brothers were in the Confederate navy. The father stood for the Union and for Lincoln. But there was no quarreling in this home over these differences. No wonder Theodore Roosevelt could refer with such pride, when a man, to the heroic deeds of the Blue and the Gray.

Theodore was a sickly boy. For this reason he was sent to a private school or had a tutor. The children spent their summers among the delights of a country home. They had all sorts of frolicsome games. They had pets: cats, dogs, rabbits, woodchucks, crows, and a Shetland pony. They ran barefoot and joined their elders in playing at haying, harvesting, and picking apples. In the fall, they climbed the hickory and the chestnut trees in search of nuts. Sometimes they played "Indian," in real fashion, by painting hands and faces with pokeberry juice! But the happiest time was Christmas. Roosevelt declares that he never knew another family to have so jolly a time.

"My father," said Roosevelt, "was the best man I ever knew." He did not permit his children to become

selfish. Each was taught to divide his gifts —not always an easy thing for older folks to do. In this home the children were taught to avoid cruelty and to practice kindness. Idleness was forbidden. The children were kept busy doing interesting things. Neither was young Roosevelt permitted to play the coward. He was taught to face unpleasant things like a man. His father never could stand a lie, even if it were only a "white" one. There was no room in that home for the coward or the bully.

209. At college. At eighteen, after a year or more spent in Egypt, Palestine, and Germany, Theodore Roosevelt came home a more enthusiastic American than



THEODORE ROOSEVELT From a photograph by Bell

ever. He now entered Harvard. He made a good but not a brilliant student. Throughout his course he taught a mission Bible class. He would not be without something to do even on Sunday.

Yet he was not a "bookworm," for he took his part in all kinds of college sports. He was a good sportsman. His true character was shown in a boxing bout. One day Roosevelt and

another student were having a hard fight. Students crowded round them. The battle was hot. Time was

called. Roosevelt promptly dropped his hands, while the other fellow landed a smashing blow on Roosevelt's nose. "Foul! foul!" shouted the students. "No. He did not hear," cried Roosevelt, and warmly shook hands with the offending student. How many boys can stand a blow in the face and not get angry? Roosevelt could.

210. Hard knocks make him strong. Roosevelt resolved to make himself stronger. He took boxing lessons, and became skilled in this art. He rode horseback in the chase. He took long tramps into the dark woods of Maine. In the summer he went on canoe trips, and in the winter on long hikes on snowshoes.

He was nominated for the state legislature. He must now show his mettle. He began canvassing. A saloonkeeper declared his license too high. Roosevelt declared it was too low, and told the saloonkeeper that he would make it higher if elected. Despite the opposition he was elected.

Before he got through at Albany he learned that no man whose moral character was weak could be a leader. Another lesson he learned was that a man in office must act as if he were never to hold another. He was elected three times to the legislature and made a name for himself in fighting bad laws and demanding good ones.

Every kind of active life appealed to him. He longed to try the life of a cowboy and hunter. So he spent two years on the ranches of the Northwest. He was a young man then and with all the enthusiasm of youth he hunted the big game of the Rockies, rode the "bucking broncho," and slept with his saddle for a pillow in the "round-up."

This life tested courage as well as endurance, but Roosevelt was equal to the test. One day a drunken fellow with pistols in his belt ordered him to treat the crowd. Roosevelt knocked him down and took his guns from him. Again, Roosevelt, with two companions, chased three horse thieves one hundred and fifty miles and arrested and jailed them.

In this big young country where bravery and manliness meant so much, the people thought there was no one like him.

He served as civil service commissioner for four years under President Harrison and for two years under Grover Cleveland, a Democrat. He was not head of the commissioners, but he worked so hard and fought the "spoilsman" so boldly that everybody called it Roosevelt's Commission. He had to fight both Republicans and Democrats, for they were bent on turning men out of office simply because the positions were needed for their party workers.

In 1895, Roosevelt was appointed police commissioner for New York City. As head of the Police Board he was on the Health Board, too. He took special delight in looking after playgrounds for the children of the slums. He was aided by Jacob Riis, who wrote *How the Other Half Lives*. Roosevelt's idea was to take children from the streets and put them in playgrounds to prevent them from becoming "toughs." People outside of his own state were beginning to take notice of him. A Washington city editor said, "Roosevelt is the biggest man in New York City. I saw a steady stream of people go up and down the stairs which led to police headquarters. He has more visitors than the President."

York could not get promoted unless he had a "pull." But Roosevelt changed this. A veteran of the War between the States, who had served for a long time as a policeman and had no "influence," rescued twenty-eight men and women from drowning. Congress had given him two medals, but New York City did nothing. Roosevelt came. The veteran, one night, plunged into the icy river and rescued a woman. Roosevelt showed



COLONEL ROOSEVELT AND A GROUP OF ROUGH RIDERS

his appreciation by promoting him. Every man on the force did his best now, for he knew promotion would come.

Roosevelt was called to be assistant secretary of the navy, under President McKinley. He built up the navy and sent Dewey with the fleet to the Pacific. The war with Spain came. Roosevelt resigned, raised the Rough Riders, and took command with Colonel Wood.

212. "Rough Rider" becomes president. For bravery in leading the Rough Riders in a gallant charge up San Juan Hill in the face of a murderous fire, he was promoted and a medal was ordered for him.

He went back to New York with his Rough Riders, who fairly worshiped him. "He knows everybody in

the regiment," said one. "He is as ready to listen to a private as a major-general," said another. The boys presented him with a statue of the "Broncho Buster." Tears ran down the sun-tanned faces as a comrade made a touching speech. Roosevelt now was a real hero.

On his return from war he was elected governor of New York. He told the leaders of his party that he would be controlled by no men or set of man. He said that he would gladly talk with all classes of men, but must be permitted to make up his own mind. This was plain talk for the "bosses." "He just plays the honesty game," said a Tammany politician. But he had the same old battles as when a young man in the legislature.

After two years Roosevelt was nominated for the vice-presidency. The New York "bosses" were glad, because they knew that as president of the Senate he could do little to disturb them. But he had set a good example, and the great man who brought notice of his nomination said, "There is not a young man in the United States who has not found your life and influence an incentive to better things and higher ideals."

He made a whirlwind campaign. He spoke for eight weeks in twenty-four states, traveling more than twenty thousand miles, making nearly seven hundred speeches to three million citizens.

In just six months President McKinley was assassinated and Roosevelt became President.

213. At height of ambition. He had made himself strong. He had always loved and respected his father and mother. He had taught the mission class while in college. He had worked with plain men for the public good. He had fought against spoilsmen in state and

national politics. He had battled for the right of children to playgrounds in New York City. He had led

the Rough Riders up San Juan Hill. He had stood, as governor of New York, against wrong - doing in high as well as low places. He had been made vice-president against his will, for the good of his party. Now he stood at the height of political power in America. He was President of the United States.

The people liked him so well that they called him to be President a second time; and that, too, by the largest majority ever given up to that time.



ROOSEVELT AS A "ROUGH RIDER"
From a photograph by Uniterwood & Underwood

His, motto was "a square deal for everybody." He did many fine things. He stopped men from stealing public lands in the West. He built great dams in the dry regions to hold the water for raising crops. He established national parks containing millions of acres of woodland. He kept millions of acres of coal lands from falling into the hands of private companies. He established fifty-one national reservations where birds

He was the youngest President who had ever been elected.

Down to this time, Roosevelt was the most learned man

might nest or roost protected from harm. He enjoyed

saving what nature had given men.

ever made President. He knew more subjects and knew them better than most educated men, and he was a great writer.

214. Always fought lawbreakers. Roosevelt was known as the "man with a big stick," because he fought lawbreakers so hard.

After he retired from the presidency he made a longplanned visit to Africa and Europe. He hunted big game in Africa and gave to the United States the specimens he killed. You may see them in the National Museum when you visit Washington.

In Europe he was well received by the big men. He afterward went to South America to visit the interesting people there and to see their wonderful country.

In 1912 he helped to form a new political party, the "Progressives." They nominated him for President, but Woodrow Wilson was elected.

In the great World War, Roosevelt stood for the Allies from the first. He opposed our neutrality and our failure to get ready earlier for the war which he saw coming.

When America declared war, he begged to take to Europe an army which would have gathered quickly at his call. Other plans were already made for our army. President Wilson felt he could not change these even to send Roosevelt. So he could not go himself, but he did send four sons. Two of them, Theodore and Archie, were wounded, and Quentin gave his life flying and fighting inside the German lines.

The country was shocked when the news came in January, 1919, that Roosevelt was dead. No other man roused the love and admiration of the boys and girls as did Roosevelt. The children called him "Teddy."

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Though the son of a rich man Roosevelt even as a boy was most democratic. 2. In the Roosevelt home idleness, selfishness, and cowardice were unknown. 3. In college Roosevelt was a good student and a good sportsman. 4. Roosevelt was elected three times to the New York state legislature. 5. In 1895 he was appointed police commissioner for New York City. 6. Under President McKinley he was chosen Assistant Secretary of the navy. 7. During the Spanish-American War he organized the Rough Riders and led them to victory. 8. On his return from war he was elected governor of New York. 9. In 1900 he was elected Vice-President and on the death of President McKinley six months later became President. 10. In 1904 he was reëlected. II. After he retired from the presidency he traveled in Africa, Europe, and South America. 12. Although nominated for President in the campaign of 1912, he was defeated by Woodrow Wilson. 13. At the beginning of the World War, Roosevelt opposed neutrality and advocated preparedness. 14. Although he could take no active part in the war, he sent four sons to France. 15. In January, 1919, Roosevelt

Study Questions. 1. Describe Roosevelt's boyhood. 2. What influence did his family life have on his character? 3. Show how Roosevelt's character was revealed by the boxing bout. 4. What sort of young man was he during his college days? 5. What was his first political experience and what did he learn from it? 6. What did Roosevelt accomplish as head of the Police Board?; as Assistant Secretary of the navy; 7. Explain his connection with the Rough Riders. 8. Tell how Roosevelt came to be President and what he accomplished in that office. 9. What was Roosevelt's political nickname and why was it given to him? 10. Relate his activities from the time he retired from the presidency up to 1914. 11. Explain his attitude toward the World War and tell the part he played in it.

Suggested Readings. ROOSEVELT: Hagedorn, Boys' Life of Theodore Roosevelt; Morgan, Theodore Roosevelt, the Boy and the Man; Hale, A Week in the White House with Theodore Roosevelt; Riis, Theodore Roosevelt, the Citizen.

THE PANAMA CANAL

WILLIAM CRAWFORD GORGAS, THE MAN WHO DROVE OUT YELLOW FEVER

was born in the historic city of Mobile, Alabama. He was a small boy when the Southern Confederacy was formed and Jefferson Davis became its president. He saw his father go off to serve in the Confederate army. He was filled with pride when that father became General Josiah Gorgas. Possibly he would some day be a famous general himself.

In the meantime he went to school and to college. Then came a new ambition. He would be a great doctor. So he studied medicine. When he was twenty-five he became a medical officer in the United States Army.

216. Gorgas studies yellow fever. His work took him into the far South. Here he became deeply interested in the study of yellow fever. This was a strange and terrible disease. It attacked people suddenly. It spread rapidly from house to house. Many who had it died. Could any one find a way to stop it? No one yet had done so. Gorgas made up his mind to do it.

His chance soon came. He was sent to Havana in Cuba. This was one of the homes of yellow fever. Could the young army doctor drive it out? How he worked to do it! Havana was dirty. Perhaps that was the trouble. So he cleaned it as no city ever had been cleaned. Houses, yards, streets, sewers—everything was cleaned so as to leave no spot for the fever to breed in. It was a wonderful work, but the fever did not stop. Was he to fail? No, for just then a discovery was made.

217. Walter Reed finds out what spreads yellow fever. Somebody had suggested that mosquitoes might have

Walter Reed and several other young army doctors determined to find out about it. It was a dangerous task. One of them, Dr. Lazear, caught the fever and died. Others were very ill. But they settled the question. By careful tests they proved that yellow fever was not "caught" like the measles. It was carried from one person to another by a certain kind of mosquito. That was a great discovery.

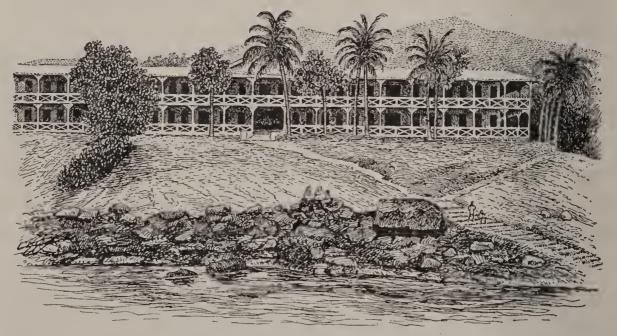


WILLIAM CRAWFORD GORGAS

How could yellow fever be stopped?

- Gorgas saw the tests and knew what they meant. Now he started to work once more in Havana. This time he fought mosquitoes. He drained the pools. He oiled the standing water. He put wire screens in the windows to shut out the mosquitoes. In three months there was no more yellow fever in the great city of Havana.
- 19. He cleans up Panama. Gorgas had won this fight. He was soon to begin another. The United States had undertaken to build the Panama Canal. The French had tried it and failed. Their engineers were skillful and they worked bravely, but the yellow fever was too deadly. Hundreds and hundreds of their

laborers died. Finally in despair they gave up the attempt. Could we succeed? That would depend on whether we could make the place healthful. Who could do it? Why not send the man who had worked wonders in Havana? So thought President Roosevelt, and sent Gorgas down there to do what he had done in Havana. It was a big job and a hard one. There were two cities to be cleaned up and a great stretch of land between them full of marshes and thick jungles. Some sneered at Gorgas and said he could not do it. This only made him work harder. He looked over the big task and settled down to go through with it. Swamps were drained, ditches opened, streams oiled, sewers put in the towns, new and pure water works built, hospitals set up, houses screened. It was a huge task, and it took time to get things going right. But once again Gorgas won



HOSPITAL AT LABOGA ISLAND, PANAMA From Pan-American Union Bulletin

his fight. The Isthmus of Panama became one of the healthiest spots on the globe. The workmen now had a

fair chance, and the United States built the great canal. It is one of the most stupendous works of our day, and it was made possible by the skill of Gorgas. He was now made General Gorgas, and became Surgeon General of the United States Army. His dreams had all come true.

GEORGE WASHINGTON GOETHALS, THE MAN WHO BUILT THE PANAMA CANAL

220. The Panama Canal. The great development of the Pacific coast region brought demands for fast and easy communication with the East. It was this which first made Americans realize the value to their country of a canal across the Isthmus. Railroads were built across the mountains, but transportation was still very expensive. The remedy lay in a short route by water between the east and the west coasts. People saw that a canal across the Isthmus of Panama must be built at whatever cost.

In 1903 the United States obtained a strip of land ten miles wide from the new Republic of Panama. Work was then begun by our government.

ress of the work there were several changes in the position of chief engineer in charge of building the canal. In 1907 this work was given to George Washington Goethals, of the corps of army engineers. Colonel Goethals was born in Brooklyn, June 29, 1858. At the age of fifteen he entered the College of the City of New York. At graduation he stood at the head of his class. He then took up the study of engineering at the United States Military Academy at West Point. He advanced rapidly,

and when twenty-four years of age was appointed first lieutenant of army engineers. After teaching at West



GEORGE W. GOETHALS

Point for several years he was appointed captain of engineers. His ability caused him to be given charge of the Mussel Shoals Canal Construction on the Tennessee River. During the Spanish-American War he served with the volunteers as lieutenant-colonel and chief of engineers.

In 1907 came the great opportunity of his life. He was given charge of building

the Panama Canal. He faced a gigantic task. But the government of his country had entrusted it to him, and he determined to do it without losing more lives by fever than necessary. For this reason the Canal Zone was cleaned up and made a healthful place in which to live. Then the work was begun.

The building of the Canal took about eight years' time, required the services of forty thousand men, and cost the United States about four hundred million dollars.

When the Canal was nearly finished, in 1914, a civil government was established in the Canal Zone. President Wilson appointed Colonel Goethals the first governor. The enormous task which he had done so well showed that he was a great manager as well as a great engineer.

Pacific coast states can now send the valuable products of their forests, streams, fields, and mines to the Atlantic coast by water. The water route to New York has been shortened by 7,800 miles, and to Europe by more than 5,600 miles. The canal supplies a cheaper means of carrying freight than the overland route, and there is no limit to its usefulness for this purpose.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Studies medicine and becomes a medical officer in the United States Army. 2. Studies yellow fever. 3. Walter Reed finds out what spreads yellow fever. 4. Gorges puts an end to yellow fever in Havana and the Isthmus of Panama. 5. He is made Surgeon General of the

United States Army.

6. The great development of the Pacific coast region brought home to Americans the urgent necessity for a short route by water between the east and the west coasts. 7. The United States took up the work of building a canal at Panama. 8. George Washington Goethals was given position of chief engineer. 9. Educated at West Point, Goethals served as chief of engineers in the Spanish-American War. 10. The Canal was completed in 1914 and Goethals was appointed first governor of the Canal Zone, a strip of land ten miles wide along the course of the Canal.

Study Questions. 1. What was Gorgas' ambition? 2. What disease did he study? 3. What did Walter Reed discover? 4. Tell about Gorgas' work in Havana and the Isthmus of

Panama. 5. How was he rewarded for this work?

6. What first brought home to Americans the urgent need of a canal across the Isthmus? 7. Who was put in charge of the work? 8. Where did Goethals study engineering? 9. In what war did he serve? 10. When was the Canal completed?

Suggested Readings. WILLIAM CRAWFORD GORGAS: Gorgas,

Sanitation in Panama, 339.

GOETHALS: Nida, Panama and Its "Bridge of Water," 63-187.

WOODROW WILSON

WHO BELIEVED IN MAKING THE WORLD SAFE FOR DEMOCRACY

223. Early days. Woodrow Wilson was born in Staunton, Virginia. His father was a Presbyterian preacher with Scotch blood in his veins. He taught his son to fear God, and to think for himself.

When Woodrow was still a small boy, the family moved to Augusta, Georgia. One day he heard some one say, "Lincoln is elected and there will be war." The war soon came. It was the great War between the States. He was still a boy when it ended, but the memory of it lived in his heart. Years later he wrote a book about it.

- the war was over, the boy went to the best teachers that his father could find. At home his parents helped him. They read good books aloud. He liked to listen to them. In time he was ready for college. First he entered Davidson College in North Carolina. But his health failed and he returned home. When he was well again he went to Princeton. Here he found men from all parts of the country. It was a new life to him. He liked it. There were great teachers. There were interesting books. There were many things to stir his ambition.
- 225. Woodrow Wilson, attorney-at-law. But college life was soon over. Young Woodrow now became Mr. Wilson, and must make his own living. How should he do it? He was a keen debater. He liked to think things out. So he made up his mind to be a lawyer.

The greatest law school in the South was that of the University of Virginia. So Wilson went there. He worked

hard, but did not spend all his time in study. His voice often rang out in college songs with happiness and vigor.

Soon this training, too, was over. Where should he settle? Georgia was the home of his boyhood. There many of his early friends lived. Atlanta was a live, progressive city. So to Atlanta he went. In the heart of the



BIRTHPLACE OF WOOOROW WILSON AT STAUNTON, VIRGINIA

city he and another young man rented an office and put up their sign: "Renick and Wilson, Attorneys-at-Law."

Often he had time to sit among his books, studying the deep things of the law. Then he found out something, not all at once, but little by little. It was this: He did not care to be a lawyer as much as to study law. What, then, should he do? He was twenty-seven years old. Was it too late to change his business? Could he make a living as a scholar and a teacher? Could he write books? Something in him said, "Try it." So he took the chance. He said good-by to friends in Atlanta and set out for the new Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore. With that group of fine young scholars he would cast his lot. He would be a scholar and a writer.

There he soon made his mark. Men began to talk of him as "the brilliant young Wilson." He set to work to study our government as no man had ever done. How did it really work? He went to Washington to

watch Congress. He talked with men. Above all he tried to find out for himself how things actually were done. Then he put it all in a book which he called *Congressional Government*. It was a great book and made him famous.

227. President of Princeton University. Wilson taught in a number of colleges. At last there came a call from old Princeton. His heart beat high as he returned to its famous halls. How the scenes of his student days came back to his mind! Perhaps that is why he understood the young men so well, and why they liked him.

The time came when Princeton needed a new president. Wilson was chosen. Men wondered what changes he would make. They soon saw. "In Princeton," he said, "men must learn more." So he searched all over the land for bright young teachers to help the boys with their work and to induce them to love it. It was a fine idea, and gave to many a young fellow a sort of big brother to stir and aid him.

Next he undertook to bring all kinds of men together in their daily life. It was a struggle for democracy. But the old habits were dear to the hearts of Princeton men, and they would not give them up. This part of Wilson's plan failed, yet the effort was not wholly wasted. The country had learned to think of Wilson as a truly progressive leader. A new call now came to him.

228. Governor of New Jersey. The state needed a governor. The leaders of the Democratic party turned to Wilson. He promised the people he would carry out certain reforms if they made him governor. He was elected. Some men tried to keep him from making good his promises. They did not know the kind of man he

was. He would have no secret meetings with them. The reforms must be made. He saw to it that they were

made. He was the people's governor and he ran the government for their good.

United States. People everywhere began to talk about Governor Wilson. Here was a man who believed in reforms. He knew how to get them adopted. He had the courage to do it, no matter what the bosses said. Why not make him president of the United States and let him do the same thing in a bigger way? So when the time came to



WOODROW WILSON AS A YOUNG MAN From a photograph by the Keystone View Company

choose a candidate in 1912 the Democrats chose Wilson. It was a hot campaign, but Wilson won.

230. New laws to remedy old evils. Wilson had again promised reforms if elected. Would he keep his word? Could he do for the nation what he had done in the state?

When Congress met, he made one change at once. Since the time of President Adams, all presidents had been in the habit of sending written messages to be read to Congress. Wilson came himself and spoke to the members. He told them what should be done. Some did not wish to do what he urged. But again Wilson won. Laws that made important reforms were passed as he had promised.

White House he found trouble with Mexico waiting for him. The president of Mexico had been murdered. Huerta, who claimed his place, was supposed to have had a hand in the murder. Wilson refused to recognize a president whose hands were red with blood. He hoped the Mexicans would in time put a good man in his place. Meanwhile he said he believed in "watchful waiting." Some people in the United States wanted an army sent to Mexico to straighten out things. Some thought we ought to take over Mexico and run it. But Wilson opposed these plans. To a great crowd in Mobile, Alabama, he said boldly that we would never take away one foot of another people's country.

At length the "watchful waiting" was rewarded. Huerta left Mexico. Wilson recognized Carranza, his successor. But trouble with Mexico was not yet over. A bold Mexican bandit, named Villa, made raids along our Texas border. Carranza could not stop him. Wilson had to send Pershing with soldiers to chase him far into the wild mountains of Mexico.

232. A great war begins in Europe. Meanwhile (1914) the greatest of all wars began in Europe. As time went on nearly all the nations of the world were drawn in. Germany and Austria were the leaders on one side; England, France, and Russia on the other. Could we keep out of the war? Wilson hoped that we could. He urged everyone to act fairly toward, even to try to think fairly of, both sides.

It was hard to keep from taking sides. The English searched our mail and stopped our trading ships. That made us angry. But we could not forget the cruelty

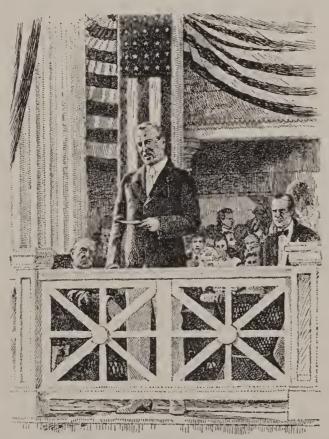
with which the Germans fought on land and sea. When their submarines sank passenger ships with Americans on board, a storm of protest arose.

- 233. Sinking of the "Lusitania." On May 7, 1915, the great British steamship, "Lusitania," was steaming along the coast of Ireland in broad daylight. Nearly two thousand people were on board. The ship was not armed. Not a sign of the enemy was to be seen. Suddenly a line of bubbles marked the surface of the sea. Then a torpedo exploded under the great ship's side. At once the vessel began to sink. In twenty-one minutes it went down. So quickly did it all happen that over a thousand men, women, and little children lost their lives. They were peaceful people sailing the high seas in a passenger ship. They were killed without warning. The submarine did not stay to rescue them when their own vessel went down. Among the lost were over a hundred Americans. A wave of anger swept over the country.
- 234. Wilson again is chosen president. It was a trying time for Wilson. Some called for war at once with Germany. Some cried out that England must not interfere with our trade. Europe was being ruined by the most terrible war in history. Could we keep out of it? Wilson had hoped so and he was not yet ready to give up that hope. Many people felt as he did. They had taken as their cry: "War in the East. Peace in the West. Thank God for Wilson!"

But if we were to remain neutral there must be no more "Lusitania" horrors. It was hard to make Germany understand this. At last, with wonderful patience, Wilson made her see that to repeat such an act would mean war.

In the fall of 1916 came the presidental election. The great reforms that Wilson had promised had been made. He had patiently kept us out of war with Mexico. With still greater patience he had kept us out of war in Europe. Some thought he had been too patient, but the American people rallied to him. He was again chosen President.

235. The United States declares war. The hope for peace did not last much longer. Germany had sunk many ships with Americans on board, and early in 1917 she sent word that she would begin a still more terrible submarine war. She wished to cut off all food from England. There would be a "war zone" around the



WOODROW WILSON AT SHADOW LAWN
IN THE SUMMER OF 1913
From a photograph by the Keystone
View Company

British Isles. All vessels, even those of neutral countries, like the United States, if found in that region would be sunk.

On April 2, 1917, the President went before Congress and stated the situation. In the clearest possible words he summed up the acts of Germany that made peace no longer possible. There was no bitterness in his speech. It was simple, clear, and convincing. He asked Congress to declare that what

Germany was doing was actually war against us. Congress did so. On April 6, 1917, it formally declared

that a state of war existed between the United States and Germany.

April 6 was a great day in America. The enthusiasm of the people knew no bounds. Flags and banners were flung to the breeze. Soon recruiting officers were seen in every town and city in America. The boys were marching away to the training camps, and our regular soldiers and the National Guards were being prepared for service in France.

at us because she thought our people were so devoted to dollars that we would not fight. But by the close of 1917 she began to change her mind. She saw that we were in earnest, and she planned to strike hard before we could help. If we did not hurry she would win. General Pershing was sent with some troops at once. How the French cheered when they saw them come! As fast as we could we sent more men—thousands and thousands of them.

These soldiers, half trained and green, according to Germany's way of thinking, went into battle. They helped to check the victorious Germans at the Marne, at St. Mihiel, and in Argonne Forest. No German "shock" troops, the best in the world, could stand before these boys fresh from America. The French, midway, and the British in the north were striking smashing blows. These forces soon had the Germans reeling toward the Rhine.

237. The armistice is signed. In November, 1918, Germany asked for terms of peace. On November 11, General Foch, the commander of the Allied forces, met them and they signed the armistice. Great was the rejoicing in all the Allied countries.

In the meantime, President Wilson had said again and again that we were not fighting for any selfish advantage, but were trying to make the world "safe for democracy."

He had pointed out fourteen things that ought to be done when peace was made. These "Fourteen Points" became famous.

The nations that had won the victory now planned to meet in Paris to make a treaty of peace. The American people could hardly believe the news when told that President Wilson would himself go to Europe to help make the treaty of peace.

It was a great sight to see the President and his company go on board the steamship "George Washington," December 4, 1918. A noisy "send-off" was given them by the people. Airplanes circled over the ship on its way out to sea. The great battleship "Pennsylvania" and a number of destroyers guarded the President's ship to Brest, the landing place of so many thousand of American boys. Here he was greeted by the mayor as "the messenger of justice and peace."

238. President Wilson welcomed by the Allies. President Wilson hastened to Paris. The people cheered him eagerly. The president of the French Republic showed him great honor, and told him how thankful the people of France were for what our boys had done.

Later he went to England. Here he was given a great banquet by the king and queen in Buckingham Palace. The king made a fine address. He declared that the two nations had been brothers in arms and that their arms had been crowned with victory. President

Wilson, deeply touched by the king's speech, made one of his happiest replies.

The President spoke in many places in England. The people lined the streets and crowded about him when he spoke.

A little later Wilson was in Rome, Italy. He had a wonderful time in that ancient city so filled with memories of a mighty past. The king of Italy entertained him in the royal palace. Wilson spoke to thousands of Italians who had bravely borne their part in the great struggle, now just ended. The city



WOODROW WILSON AS PRESIDENT From a photograph by the Keystone View Company

of Genoa, on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, was the birthplace of Columbus. Of course President Wilson went to Genoa and visited the monument dedicated to Columbus. He was greeted by thousands upon thousands of enthusiastic Italians wherever he went.

239. Wilson at the Peace Conference. President Wilson hastened back to Paris, where the Peace Conference opened. The president of France welcomed the great men who had been sent there by fourteen different nations.

On January 25, the President spoke before the Peace Conference on the League of Nations. He spoke most eloquently, because the League of Nations was a new

thing in the world and he believed in it with all his heart. A few days later he told the French Chamber of Deputies that he had come to the peace table for the special purpose of helping to establish the League of Nations. This was to be different from those secret promises of the past by which two or three nations agreed to help each other. This was an agreement in which in time all the leading nations of the world were to join. Its purpose was to keep peace among the nations of the world.

- 240. The League the heart of the treaty. The men who made the peace treaty worked through the spring and into the summer. They had many hard problems. They gave France her two states, Alsace and Lorraine, which Germany had taken in the war of 1870-71. They divided Austria into separate states, giving to each kind of people its own government. They set up new nations, and changed many boundary lines of old ones. They also decided that Germany should pay Belgium and France for the destruction of property in those countries. But the heart of all these arrangements was the League of Nations.
- 241. The League and the Senate. Before a treaty can be binding it must be approved by a two-thirds vote of our Senate. At first it seemed that the Senate would accept the peace treaty, possibly after making some changes in it. But soon the situation became more uncertain.

We had risen to great heights of enthusiasm during the war. Lives and money had been given freely to save the world from a great danger. But the fighting was now over and the excitement was passing away. Men wanted

to put their minds back on their usual work. They cared less about Europe and more about their own business.

Some objected to special parts of the League. They thought it might bring us into war against our will. Others opposed it for political reasons; still others, because they disliked President Wilson.

It was a hard fight. If more than a third of the Senate opposed the treaty, it could not be passed and the League of Nations could not be established.

President Wilson's heart was set on the League. To him it seemed the one thing that could save the world from future wars. He thought also it was the only way to heal the hatred that the war had left. He wanted it in order to prevent war. He wanted it in order to enjoy peace.

President Wilson was already weary from the long strain. But summoning all his strength, he set forth to speak in many cities in favor of the League. It was a great and earnest appeal to the people. Out through the Middle West he went. Then down the Pacific Coast. Crowds went to hear him. Some approved, some hesitated. All America waited to see the final result of his appeal.

Suddenly his strength broke down. All his other speaking plans had to be given up. His train sped back to Washington. Thenceforward the fates of treaty and League must lie in other hands. On November 19, 1919, the Senate laid the treaty aside. Enough other nations have adopted the League to start it working. What its fate will be, and whether we shall yet join it, only the future can tell.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Thomas Woodrow Wilson was born in Staunton, Virginia. 2. He studied at Davidson College, at Princeton University, and at Johns Hopkins University. 3. He practiced law in Atlanta for a short time. 4. He taught at different colleges and finally at Princeton University. Later he was made president of Princeton and in that office worked for reform. 6. He was elected governor of New Jersey. 7. In 1912 he was elected President of the United States. President among many other important things he refused to recognize Huerta. 9. In 1916 he was reëlected to office. April, 1917, he asked Congress to declare war on Germany. II. Early in 1918 he laid down the famous "fourteen points" as the foundation for peace. 12. In December, 1918, he went to Europe to attend the Peace Conference. 13. Returning home, he made a speaking tour in behalf of the League, but was interrupted by illness. 14. The United States Senate failed to pass the Versailles treaty.

Study Questions. 1. Think of all the reasons you can why Wilson should be called a breaker of customs. 2. Describe his boyhood and school days. 3. Tell about his career as a teacher. 4. What was the significance of his election to the office of governor of New Jersey and what was his policy in that office? 5. Describe the presidential campaign of 1912. 6. Discuss the big reform measures of his first term of office. 7. What was the significance of his election to a second term? 8. Discuss the events leading up to his declaration of war on Germany and the events which followed. 9. Tell about Wilson's activities in Europe. 10. Tell the story of his efforts to get the League adopted. 11. What action did the Senate take in regard to the League?

Suggested Readings. WILSON: Hale, Woodrow Wilson— The Story of His Life; Parkman, Fighters for Peace, 285-311.

JOHN J. PERSHING

COMMANDER OF THE AMERICAN ARMY IN FRANCE

242. A hardy boy. John J. Pershing was born in Missouri in 1860. His parents were sturdy Americans who made their own way. Young John was a vigorous boy. He played at mimic war and attended school. He got into fights with his fellows, but he was square. One day his father saw the signs of battle in torn clothes and a bruised face. "Been fighting? Never let any boy say that he has licked you," was the father's remark. John had expected a whipping.

Every Sunday his father took the children to Sunday school. Young Pershing never forgot the heroes of

the Old Testament.

At day school he was a plodder. But he did win a prize, a well-bound volume of the life of Washington. This was offered by the president of the school board. John's mother was there. The children clapped and called for a speech. "I'm sorry you didn't all win a prize. I'm going to grow up like Washington," he said.

He took a course in the Kirksville Normal School and graduated in June, 1880. He

Junge 1

JOHN J. PERSHING
From a Photograph by Clinedinst

taught a "hard" school at Prairie Mound in the fall and winter. John was only twenty. He thrashed the big

boy, the "ringleader." The boy's father came the next day, breathing vengeance. Pershing thrashed the father. When he went inside, some one had written on the blackboard: "Teacher is boss here." He had no more trouble in that school.

243. He goes to West Point. In midsummer (1881) John took the examinations for West Point and won over his friend Higgenbotham by one point. His mother was there to witness John's triumph and to see him shake hands with his friend and hear him say: "I'm sorry that you could not win, too!" This was a fine spirit.

At the end of the first year at West Point he was made class leader, a position won only by hard study. When he reached his senior year, the West Point authorities made him cadet captain. His name stood high on the list of graduates, and he had won the position of lieutenant in the cavalry. He was happy when ordered to join General Miles, fighting the Indians in Arizona.

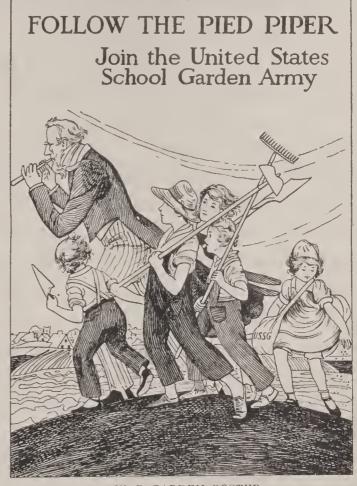
- 244. Honors come fast. Soon he was called back to West Point. This time he was a teacher. Then came our war with Spain, and he fought bravely in Cuba. Next he was needed in the Philippine Islands to subdue the fierce Moros. When Japan and Russia were at war with each other he was sent to Japan to study their ways of fighting.
- 245. A great sorrow comes to him. The Mexicans on our border were giving trouble. Pershing was sent to keep order there. He had left Mrs. Pershing and the children at the Presidio, near San Francisco. Then after looking over his command, he reported: "I am ready to take the field on five minutes' notice."

At Fort Bliss, near El Paso, he was stunned by a dispatch. It read: "Wife and children suffocated in fire at Presidio. Warren in serious condition." It could not be! In ten days his wife had planned to be with him in a new home in Fort Bliss.

246. Chases Villa into the mountains. With a heavy heart Pershing turned to the hunt for Villa, the bandit chief of Mexico. Villa was strong enough to defy the Mexican government. He made raids along our border. If we were to have peace he must be taught a lesson. Pershing, who had whipped the wild Moros, was the

man to do it. After several brushes with Mexican soldiers, Villa and his forces were scattered. The wily old fox escaped to the mountain fastnesses where he could not be found. Quiet was established in Mexico for a time.

welcomed by English and French. In 1916 Pershing was made a major-general. The great war in Europe was now raging. In April, 1917, the United



A WAR GARDEN POSTER

In the "Food Will Win the War," campaign posters
urged all school children to make gardens

States entered it. General Pershing was soon sent abroad with a few officers and soldiers to show that we

were in earnest. Other troops would follow as fast as we could get them ready. When the general reached



CARRIER PIGEONS. A MEANS OF COMMUNICATION AT THE FRONT

England he hastened to London, where he was presented to the king. The king took his hand, saying: "It has been the dream of my life to see the two great English-speaking nations more

closely united. My dream has been realized."

Then Pershing crossed over to France. Here he saw French enthusiasm. He marched between lines of warscarred veterans fresh from the trenches. The news spread quickly: "The Americans have come!" New life and fresh resolution came into the hearts of these war-tired heroes. Storms of cheers greeted Pershing. The French were cheering America.

From Boulogne to Paris every station had huge enthusiastic crowds. In Paris there had been no such display of feeling since the war began. Every hill and housetop, wall and window was filled with cheering men and women. Near the station, ranks of soldiers lined the streets for blocks. Tens of thousands were shouting, "Long live America!"

Just as young Lafayette, in the dark days of the Revolution, brought hope to America, so Pershing took new hope to France.

The Fourth of July, 1917, was a great day in France. All France united in its celebration. In Paris American soldiers were ready to go to the front. Great was the enthusiasm when Marshal Joffre and General Pershing passed along the lines inspecting the soldiers. The American band struck up the French war song, the "Marseillaise," and the French band, the "Star-Spangled Banner." The cheering of the crowds was deafening.

248. American soldiers save the day. The American soldiers now took over one hundred miles of the front, relieving tired Frenchmen. On March 21, the Germans began their long-expected drive. Russia was out of the war, and Germany was rushing soldiers by the hundred thousands to reënforce her western front and get ready for the drive on Paris.

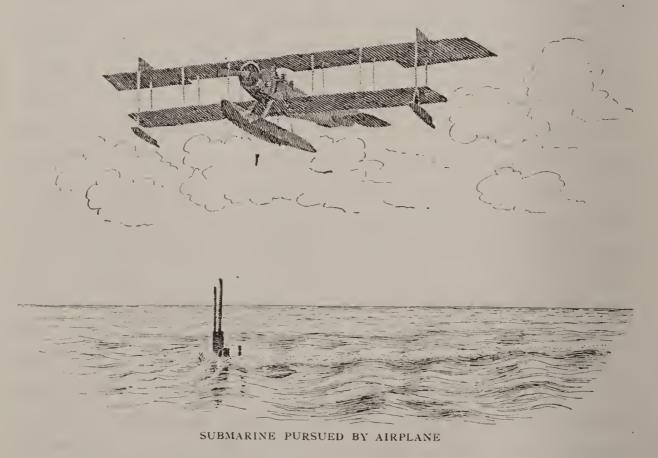
The Germans struck at the weakest point. They found this where the French and English armies joined. They drove forward in great masses. Thousands upon thousands were mowed down by the English and French guns, but on they came. Back, back the Allies fell, day after day, until the Germans reached the Marne again. The world held its breath. Each day it was thought the Germans would break through, but each day the Allied troops retreated slowly, fighting like demons and always holding their lines unbroken at vital points.

Would the Allies make a counter-drive? They had few reserves, far too few to make an attack. The cry for help arose. America responded nobly. Soldiers were hurried from training camps to the seaports. Every possible ship was used to carry them across the seas. The Allies sent all the ships they could spare. American soldiers began to arrive in great numbers. In May,

Pershing had more than one million men, and over one million more soon would be in France. It was a gigantic task to put two million men in France and keep them up to the fighting point.

Pershing now took command of the region between the Aisne and the Marne. The Germans thought the Americans untrained, and expected to break through by hurling their best "shock" troops against them.

In July, the Germans struck a terrific blow at Chateau-Thierry. General Pershing was there to watch his brave men. Without waiting for artillery, Pershing struck, and in six hours he had captured as much ground as the Germans had taken in six days. The Americans were advancing with great rapidity. The Germans did not



have time to remove their supplies. They were dumb-founded.

General Foch had received the title of Marshal and had been made commander of all the armies fighting against Germany. This gave unity to the Allied forces. Now the French struck, followed by the sledge-hammer blows of the English.

The French people were happy. They wanted to show what they thought of Pershing's work. He was called to the great military headquarters. The president of France was there. He pinned upon Pershing the Grand Cross of the Legion of Honor.

Now Pershing got ready for St. Mihiel. He drew out from the French and English ranks those Americans he had sent to learn war from these veterans. St. Mihiel was important. It threatened the famous battlefield of Verdun and protected the German fortified city of Metz.

249. Germans cry "Kamerad." September 12 the Americans burst forth in a rain of shot and shell such as the Germans never before had witnessed. The fierce battle raged for four hours. The Americans, yelling like demons, then charged across the river. The German soldiers had been taught to despise these "green American troops." But these same Germans now cried "Kamerad" in dead earnest. Five miles of ground were gained before these "green" Americans halted.

September 13 was Pershing's birthday. He wanted to do a full day's work in its honor, so his artillery opened at 1:30 in the morning. Before the day was done, he had taken from the Germans more than one hundred and fifty square miles of territory. The French people—old men, women, and children—crowded around Pershing's car. With tears in their eyes the women of France kissed the hand of their deliverer.

Both the French and the English were busy. The French were driving at the center of the great line stretching from the North Sea to Switzerland. The English were driving the Germans out of the Belgian cities and towns.

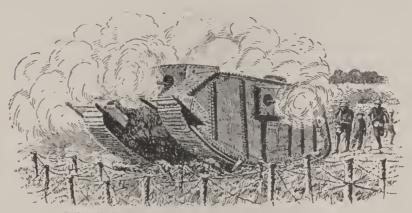
Many other battles were fought by the Americans, but perhaps the most decisive one was in the Argonne Forest. This was a half-mountainous, woody country, much of which was covered with underbrush. The Germans had fortified it strongly. Besides their great cannon, they had filled the Argonne with nests of machine guns, placing them behind trees, stumps, and rocks, and in gullies, wherever they could find protection for the gunners. Here, too, they had their best fighting men.

The battle started September 26. This was the most bloody fighting of the war. Companies and regiments were cut off and lost for a time. The Germans were determined to hold the forest, and the Americans as determined to win it. Gradually the Germans were forced back. Thousands were captured; thousands more were killed. They could not stem the American tide. After many days of hard fighting in which the Americans proved themselves more than equal to the best shock troops of the Germans, victory lighted on our banners.

The storm was just breaking loose on Germany. The combined navy of the Allies was choking out her life in spite of the submarines. The English in Asia were capturing the strongholds of the Turks, and the Italians now were gaining against the Austrians. Calamities came fast. Bulgaria, an ally of Germany, surrendered. Turkey followed. The hungry people of Germany began to plot revolution against their rulers, and her armies were retreating toward the Rhine.

The German ruler, called the Kaiser, gave up his throne and fled to Holland. His generals agreed to an

ber 11, 1918, by which they gave up much war material and crossing the Rhine, moved back many miles into their own land.



THE TANK, A NEW WEAPON IN THE WAR

250. Follows retreating Germans. In these events Pershing took an active part. His army followed the Germans to Coblenz on the Rhine, opposite one of the most strongly fortified places in the world. Here our men stayed while the German army gradually melted away.

While waiting for Germany to carry out her agreement to surrender and to make terms of peace, Pershing helped the Y. M. C. A. and other organizations to begin the splendid work of putting his famous fighters in school. Hundreds of men from American schools and colleges went to France to help in the great work.

Pershing was busy, but had to stop for congratulations and for new marks of honor. He, together with a few great Frenchmen, was summoned to England. Oxford, the most ancient university of the English-speaking race, gave him the highest degree granted by that venerable seat of learning, the degree of Doctor of Laws.

The greatest city of the world, London, presented General Pershing with a jeweled sword. His own country showed its appreciation of his services by making him "General of the Armies of the United States."

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. John Joseph Pershing was born in Laclede, Missouri. 2. He went to Kirksville Normal School and after graduating taught at Prairie Mound. 3. In 1881 he passed the examinations for West Point. 4. When he graduated from West Point he won the position of lieutenant in the cavalry. 5. He was at once sent to Arizona under General Miles to fight the Indians. 6. He was called back to West Point as tactical officer. 7. During the Spanish-American War he did good work in Cuba. 8. He was sent to the Philippines and there was successful in conquering the Moros. g. In 1905 he was sent to Japan. 10. In 1916 Pershing scattered Villa's forces in Mexico. 11. In the same year he was made a major general. 12. In May, 1917, he left for Europe to command the American Expeditionary Forces in the World War. 13. Early in 1918 Pershing and his American soldiers took over one hundred miles of the front. 14. In July, 1918, he was victorious at Chateau-Thierry. 15. In September, 1918, he carried on a successful offensive against the Germans, invading Germany. 16. After the armistice was signed Pershing led the American forces in the occupation of Germany.

Study Questions. 1. Describe Pershing as a boy in school and at play. 2. Tell about Pershing the school teacher; the student at West Point. 3. What were his military activities from the time he left West Point up to the end of the Spanish-American War? 4. What did he accomplish in the Philippines? 5. Tell about Pershing in the campaign against Mexico. 6. In, the World War how was he welcomed in England? 7. Describe his reception in France. 8. Tell what you know about the active service of Pershing and his men on the front. 9. Describe Pershing's military successes in the autumn of 1918. 10. Discuss his activities after the signing of the armistice. 11. Enumerate the foreign honors conferred upon Pershing.

Suggested Readings. Pershing: Durston, Boys' Life of Pershing; Farrell, Incidents in the Life of General John J. Pershing; Tomlinson, Story of General Pershing; Tomlinson, Scouting with General Pershing.

EDISON, MARCONI, AND THE WRIGHT BROTHERS: MEN WHO MADE NEW IDEAS WORK

THOMAS A. EDISON, THE GREATEST INVENTOR OF ELECTRICAL MACHINERY IN THE WORLD

251. The wizard of the electrical world. Thomas A. Edison was born in 1847 at Milan, Ohio. His father's people were Dutch and his mother's were Scotch. When he was seven years of age, his parents removed to Port Huron, Michigan.

Edison owed his early training to his mother's care. At the age of twelve he was reading learned books that few boys could understand. That Edison was a great reader is proved by his resolution to read all the books in

the Detroit Free Library! He did finish "fifteen feet of volumes" before any one knew what he was doing.

In 1862 General Grant fought the terrible battle of Pittsburg Landing. Everybody wanted to hear the news. Edison bought a thousand newspapers, boarded a train,

EDISON SELLING PAPERS AFTER THE BATTLE OF PITTSBURG LANDING.

boarded a train, and the engineer allowed him a few minutes at each station to sell papers.

As the first station came in sight, Edison looked ahead and saw a wild crowd of men. He grabbed an armful of



THOMAS ALVA EDISON
After a photograph from life

papers, rushed out, and sold forty before the train left. At the next station the platform was crowded with a yelling mob. He raised the price to ten cents, but sold one hundred and fifty papers.

Finally he reached Port Huron. The station was a mile from town. Edison seized his papers. He met the crowd coming just as he reached a church where a prayer meeting was being held. The prayer meeting

broke up, and though he raised his price to twenty-five cents, he "took in a young fortune."

Edison began very early to make experiments in electricity. After rigging up a line at home, hitching the wire to the legs of a cat, and rubbing the cat's back vigorously, he saw the failure of his first experiment — the cat would not stand!

At Mt. Clemens, one day, young Edison saw a child playing on the railroad with its back to an on-coming freight car. He dashed at the child and both tumbled over on the roadside. As a reward for this act of bravery the telegraph operator gave him lessons in telegraphy.

252. Begins to study electricity. He studied ten days, then disappeared. He returned with a complete set of

telegraphic instruments made by his own hand. Now he began a period of wandering as a telegraph operator. For many boys still in their teens this would have been a time of danger, but Edison neither drank nor smoked. He wandered from Adrian to Fort Wayne, Indianapolis, Cincinnati, Memphis, and Boston, stopping for shorter or longer periods at each place.

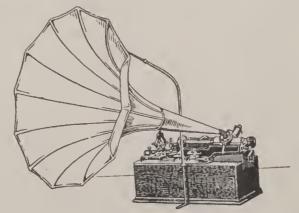
By the time he was twenty-two he had partly finished the invention by means of which two dispatches can be sent along the same wire at the same time. This was equal to doubling the number of wires in use.

He went from Boston to New York. The speculators in Wall Street were wild with excitement, for the electric machinery had broken down. Nobody could make it work. Edison pushed his way to the front and at once removed the difficulty.

All were loud in their praise of Edison. The next day he was engaged at three hundred dollars per month to take charge of all the electric machinery.

After a time he joined a company and gave his time to working out inventions. The company finally sent a

number of men to ask Edison how much he would take for his inventions. He had already decided to say five thousand. But when the men came he said that he did not know. He was dumbfounded when they offered him forty thousand dollars!



THE PHONOGRAPH

253. Edison's inventions. In 1873, Edison established his first laboratory or workshop in Newark, New Jersey.

Here he gathered more than three hundred men to turn out the inventions in electricity which his busy brain suggested. They were all as enthusiastic as Edison himself. No fixed hours of labor in this shop! When the day's work was done the men often begged to be allowed to return to the shop to complete their work.

Many telegraph and telephone improvements were invented in this laboratory. In all there were forty-five inventions. They brought in so much money that Edison decided he must have a better place to work. He built at Menlo Park, New Jersey, twenty-four miles from New York City, the finest laboratory in the world at that time. On instruments alone he spent \$100,000. In the great laboratory at Menlo Park Edison gathered one of the finest scientific libraries that money could buy. This library was for the men in the factory.

The microphone is one of Edison's inventions. Its purpose is to increase sound sent over the wire. The passing of a delicate camel's-hair brush is magnified to seem like the roar of a mighty wind in a forest of giant pines.

Next came the megaphone, an instrument to bring faraway sounds to one's hearing. Persons talking a long distance apart are able to hear each other with ease.

The most interesting and one of the most profitable of Edison's discoveries is the phonograph, which simply records sounds just as they are. The human voice is reproduced in conversation, public speaking, and singing. The music of the finest orchestras can be accurately rendered.

From the phonograph to the electric light is a long step. Edison does not claim to be the discoverer of the electric light, but he did much to make it useful to people in lighting their houses and in lighting great cities.

In Menlo Park, in the winter of 1880, Edison gave the public an exhibition of his electric lights. Visitors came from all parts of the country to see this wonderful show. Seven hundred lights were put up in the streets, in the grounds, and inside the buildings.

Edison received five gold medals and a diploma from the Electrical Exposition held in Paris, France. At the English Electrical Exposition held the next year at the



EDISON'S GREAT WORKSHOP AT ORANGE, NEW JERSEY

Crystal Palace, London, both papers and people were loud in their praise of Edison's inventions.

In Munich, Germany, in 1882, and in Vienna, Austria, his exhibitions of the wonders of electric lighting won the highest praise.

The laboratories at Menlo Park were now far too small for the business that this man of genius set in motion. In 1886, at Orange, New Jersey, Edison built the greatest of all his laboratories. Nothing was spared to make this new workshop complete.

254. A great new industry. Edison also had a part in another invention for which Americans can claim most of the credit — moving pictures.

A dispute about horse-racing did most for the discovery of moving pictures. The question was whether a horse ever had all four feet off the ground at once. To settle it, Edward Muybridge, an employee of the government, was called in. He stretched cords, fastened to the shutters of a row of cameras, across a racetrack. As the horse ran past, it took its own pictures. Later Muybridge made a camera which would take pictures very quickly, but he could not show his pictures well.

Edison in 1892 invented a camera which used long strips of celluloid film. These pictures were looked at through a slot by one person at a time.

In 1894 C. Francis Jenkins, another employee of the government invented the first complete moving picture machine.

At first people were slow to welcome the new kind of play. Now it is claimed that our fifth largest industry is moving pictures. Probably as many tickets are sold here in America each year as there are people in the world.

MARCONI, THE INVENTOR OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY

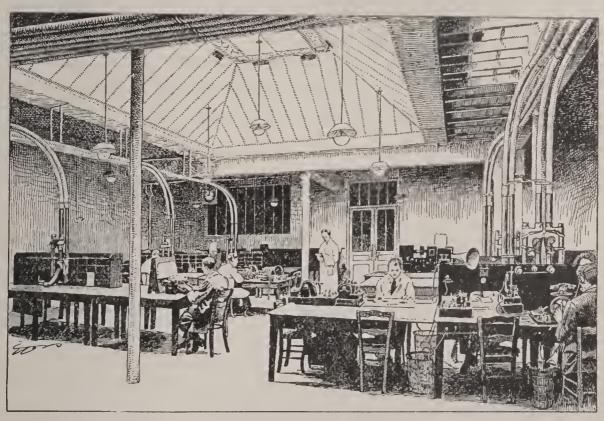
255. Marconi and the radio. People thought that the cable and the telephone were wonderful inventions, but an Italian named Marconi has made a still more wonderful discovery. He found he could send out and receive electric waves without the aid of a wire. Early in 1902, he was able to receive messages at a distance of more than two thousand miles. On December 21, 1902, the first official messages were sent across the Atlantic Ocean.

Since then, wireless telegraphy has been so improved that messages can be sent to all parts of the world. Great sending stations flash across the oceans news about politics and business. We know what is happening among distant nations as soon as we know what is occurring in our own city.

The radiotelegraph has saved many lives at sea because vessels in distress are able to call the nearest ships to their help.

From the radiotelegraph has come the radiotelephone, which transmits the voice for long distances without wires.

On Armistice Day, November 11, 1921, President Harding delivered an address at Arlington Cemetery, Washington, before a receiving machine connected with a high-power transmitting circuit. This address was



CENTRAL RADIO BUREAU, PARIS, FRANCE. MAIN SENDING AND RECEIVING ROOM, THE MOST POWERFUL IN THE WORLD From a photograph by Ewing Galloway

heard through the radiotelephone by people in large cities hundreds of miles away.

Today there are many transmitting stations which send out—or broadcast, as it is called—news items, music, weather reports, sermons, market reports, and lectures. A person may sit in his home and listen to a concert or lecture in a city thousands of miles away. All that he needs is a simple receiving outfit to catch the sound waves which are sent out from the transmitting station.

The radiotelephone is so new an invention that it is difficult to know all the uses to which it may be put in the future.

THE WRIGHT BROTHERS AND THEIR FLYING MACHINES

256. The Wright brothers. Wilbur Wright was one of two brothers who had long been at work trying to make a flying machine. He was born in 1867 and his brother Orville in 1871. Their father was a bishop whose excellent library took the place of a university education for his boys. Wilbur and Orville studied especially



A DIRIGIBLE BALLOON

trying different kinds of "gliders." They also studied the action of the atmosphere.

works on physics, mathematics. and engineering. They earned their living by makingandrepairing bicycles, but they spent much time

Before Wilbur Wright's success in 1903 progress of various kinds had been made. Fairly long flights with

gliders had been made in different countries. Two Americans. Langley and Hiram Maxim, had worked out models driven by steam. Langley's had flown half a mile over the Potomac, and Maxim's, though not allowed to fly freely, was strong enough to carry a man.

The Wright brothers were wise in employing a gasoline motor. A steam engine, with



ORVILLE WRIGHT

its large boilers, was of course much heavier. They had a rudder in the tail of their machine, but they also invented a new method of steering. By "warping" or

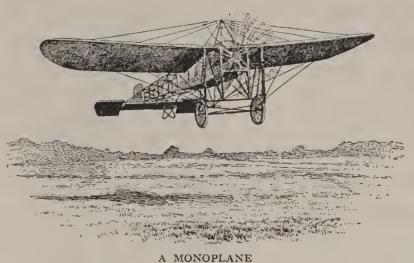


bending the planes, a monoplane, with its one set of wings, could keep its balance as well as a biplane, which had two.

After Wilbur Wright's first flight in 1903 several Frenchmen made successful flights. But in 1908 Wilbur Wright went to France and broke the records of all the French flyers by the unheard-of act of remaining

in the air for more than two hours. Later he flew twice across the English Channel.

Now the airplane can do all kinds of tricks. Aviators "loop the loop" dozens of times. They can rise verti-



A MONOPLANE
From a photograph of a Bleriot Monoplane in
"Flying," New York

cally from the ground and for a brief period remain motionless in the air. They can move at will through the air in any direction. They can ascend over forty thousand feet and can

fly at the rate of four miles a minute. All this has been accomplished since Orville Wright, in 1907, made the first record flight of an hour. Flying improved rapidly during the World War. Airplanes were used to spy out the enemy's defenses, to direct gunfire, to drop bombs on cities, to shoot down soldiers, and to hunt submarines.

The daring and brilliant fighting of airmen in the World War makes a story more breathless than that of any novel. Incidents like landing with burning planes or with planes partly



stripped of their canvas were not uncommon for these fighters of the air.

One type of airplane was used for fighting and another heavier type for bombing. Air bombing is now so accurate that in the future it may be useless to build large battleships.

257. Peace-time uses of the airplane. During times of peace airplanes are useful in exploring and for carrying passengers and light freight. Airplanes only a little more expensive than the earlier automobiles can now be bought.

Airplanes in this country are used chiefly for carrying mail. "The mail must fly" is the slogan of the mailmen of the air, and in storm or fog—even in the face of tornadoes—it has gone.

In May, 1919, a hydroplane belonging to the United States navy made the first trip across the ocean. A hydroplane is an airplane having a boat-like body so that it is able to alight on or rise from the water.

In July a British dirigible flew across with its crew. A few weeks earlier a British plane flew from continent to continent in less than sixteen hours. It took Columbus seventy days to make his crossing.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Edison was a great reader at twelve and a newsboy at fifteen. 2. He learned telegraphy, and made a set of telegraphic instruments of his own. 3. Edison saved the day in Wall Street; made a reputation and plenty of money. 4. He built several laboratories in New Jersey and has worked out many great inventions.

5. Marconi discovered that electric waves can be sent tand received without a wire. 6. The radiotelegraph has been valuable in flashing news to distant places, and in locating ships in distress. 7. The radiotelephone allows the human voice to be heard across enormous distances.

8. Wilber and Orville Wright were mechanics, but spent much time working on a flying machine. 9. Langley and

Maxim had already invented gliders driven by steam. 10. The Wright brothers invented a machine employing a gasoline motor. 11. Airplanes have been greatly improved since 1907. 12. Various types of airplanes were used in many ways during the World War.

Study Questions. 1. Prove that Edison was a great reader. 2. Tell the story of his thousand newspapers. 3. How did his experiment with the cat succeed? 4. What was the cause and what was the effect of his first lessons in telegraphy? 5. Give some reasons why Edison did not fall into bad habits as a "tramp operator." 6. What was his first great invention? 7. What did Edison find in Wall Street, New York? 8. How much did Edison think of asking for his inventions? How much did the men offer him? 9. Tell the story of the work in Edison's shop at Newark, New Jersey. 10. Why did he build a library at Menlo Park? 11. Make a list of his great inventions.

12. What did Marconi discover? 13. Tell of the development of wireless telegraphy. 14. Describe the uses to which the radiotelegraph may be put. 15. What is the radio-

telephone?

16. Tell of the Wright brothers' early life. 17. What kind of an engine did they use in their flying machine? 18. What inventors had already used a steam engine? 19. How long did Wilbur Wright remain in the air in his flight in 1908? 20. What can an aviator do now? 21. How were airplanes used during the World War?

Suggested Readings. Edison: Mowry, American Inventions and Inventors, 85–89; Dickson, Life and Inventions of Edison, 4–153, 280–338.

MARCONI: Maclaurin, The Mechanic Arts, 286-297;

Thomson, The Outline of Science, 824-827.

WILBUR AND ORVILLE WRIGHT: Wade, The Light Bringers, 112-141; Delacombe, The Boys' Book of Airships; Simonds, All about Airships; Holland, Historic Inventions.

WOMEN WHO WERE LEADERS IN GREAT MOVEMENTS

EARLY ADVOCATES OF WOMAN SUFFRAGE

258. Elizabeth Cady Stanton. Elizabeth Cady was born in New York in 1815. Her girlhood was a happy one, spent with her brother and sisters. She was a healthy, rosy-cheeked girl, full of life and fun, who believed girls were the equals of boys and had just as much sense.

When Elizabeth was eleven years old her brother died. Her father grieved deeply over the loss of his only son, and Elizabeth determined to try to be to her father all that her brother might have been. She therefore studied hard so that she might help him.

Her father was a lawyer. He had been a member of Congerss. Many hours Elizabeth spent in his office, listening while his clients stated their cases. She became angry at what she found to be the unequal position of women in almost every walk of life. She decided to devote her life to gaining for women the same rights that men had.



ELIZABETH CADY STANTON
From a photograph

While studying she did not neglect the arts of housekeeping. She regarded work in the home her highest duty. When twenty-five years old she married Henry B. Stanton, a lawyer and newspaper man. But even when



SUSAN B. ANTHONY From a photograph by Veeder, $Albany,\ N.\ Y.$

busy with the duties of home and children she did not forget her old resolve to struggle for the rights of women.

rights convention. In 1848 Mrs. Stanton called a woman's rights convention—the first ever held.

Mrs. Stanton read to the convention a set of twelve resolutions, the now

famous "Declaration of Sentiments." It demanded for women equality with men and "all the rights and privileges which belong to them as citizens of the United States," including the right to vote. This was the first public demand for woman suffrage. The resolutions were passed. Everybody made fun of them, but Mrs. Stanton's position remained unchanged.

260. Susan B. Anthony. A few years after this historic convention, Mrs. Stanton met Susan B. Anthony. Miss Anthony was the daughter of Friends, or Quakers as they are often called. She was born at South Adams, Massachusetts, in 1820, her father had a school at Battenville, New York, and here Susan received her early education.

From her seventeenth birthday until she met Mrs. Stanton, Miss Anthony had been teaching school. At first she had no sympathy with the Declaration of

Sentiments, but when she met Mrs. Stanton she changed her mind.

From this time on these two fought side by side for the cause of women. They traveled and lectured in all parts of the country. In 1868 they started a weekly paper, which they called *The Revolution*. Miss Anthony was the business manager and Mrs. Stanton was the editor. Its motto was, "The True Republic—men, their rights and nothing more; women, their rights and nothing less."

In 1869 they organized the National Woman's Suffrage Association. Every year from 1869 until her death, in 1906, Miss Anthony spoke to committees of Congress. In 1872 she cast a vote for president. She declared it to be her right under the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution. For this act she was arrested and fined, but the fine never was collected.

Mrs. Stanton died in 1902. The great movement she had started was on its way to victory. Congress passed the suffrage amendment in 1919, and in August, 1920, it became a law. Over twenty-five million women were entitled to vote in the presidential elections that year.

FRANCES E. WILLARD, THE GREAT TEMPERANCE CRUSADER; CLARA BARTON, WHO FOUNDED THE RED CROSS SOCIETY IN AMERICA; AND JANE ADDAMS, THE FOUNDER OF HULL HOUSE SOCIAL SETTLEMENT IN CHICAGO

261. Frances E. Willard. In 1839, when Frances Elizabeth Willard was born, thousands were leaving the eastern states for the new West. Her father and mother were successful teachers in New York, but when Frances was two years old they decided to move with the west-

ward current. After living five years at Oberlin, Ohio, the family moved to Janesville, Wisconsin. They settled



FRANCES E. WILLARD
From a photograph

on a farm in the midst of beautiful hills and woods. There Frances and her brother and sister grew up healthy, happy children, playing together in the forest and fields. The parents were religious and were total abstainers, and the children never forgot their teachings.

At fifteen Frances went to school in Janesville, and

at eighteen years of age to a Milwaukee college for girls. The following year she entered Northwestern Female College at Evanston, Illinois. At graduation she stood at the head of her class.

Miss Willard began teaching. Then the death of her sister Mary, and shortly afterward, of her father, broke up her home. That home had been a happy one Frances Willard made up her mind to spend her life in spreading abroad a knowledge of such homes, and in helping women to become equal with men before the law.

In 1874 came the anti-saloon crusade. Miss Willard saw that this movement was part of the fight for better and happier homes, and threw herself ardently into the work. When the Woman's Christian Temperance Union was organized in Chicago, she became its president.

In 1879 she became the president of the National Union. Her work was never-ending. She wrote books;

she lectured all over the country. For twelve years she held an average of one meeting a day.

Miss Willard saw that unless women had the right to assist in making laws, their cause was hopeless. She therefore delcared herself in favor of woman suffrage. A few years later the Woman's Christian Temperance Union followed their leader into politics in an effort to encourage temperance legislation.

Miss Willard's work constantly became wider until it became world-wide, and the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union was organized in 1883, with Miss Willard as president. She had united the women of the world in a great league for the protection of the home. Miss Willard remained to the end of her life president of the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union. She died in 1898.

262. Clara Barton. Clara Barton was born in 1821, near Oxford, Massachusetts. She was educated to be a school teacher, and for many years followed that profession. In 1861 she visited Washington, and there felt the impulse that led to her great lifework.

The injured soldiers from the first battles of the Civil War were being brought to Washington. Miss Barton at once felt it her duty to help care for them. She not only nursed the wounded, but she encouraged those who were on their way to the line of battle.

263. Goes to the battle field. The men that were being taken to the hospitals received no care until they arrived there. Miss Barton saw that her place was on the battle field.

She secured a pass to the firing line, and for four years she followed the Union soldiers. She was constantly in danger; her clothing was pierced by bullets, her face blackened by powder. But she was undaunted. The



From a photograph by Charles E. Smith, Evanston, Illinois

soldiers needed her, and she must be there to help them. When she could, she nursed wounded Confederate as well as Federal soldiers. She received no pay for her work.

When the war was over, Miss Barton went to Europe. There she learned of the Red Cross Society, founded in Geneva in 1863. The purpose of the society was to care for the wounded of any nation on the field of battle. A treaty among the nations agreed that the Red Cross nurses

should be free from capture. Miss Barton was asked to organize a branch of the Red Cross Society in the United States.

In 1882 President Arthur signed the treaty, and the American Red Cross, with Miss Barton as its first president, was established. She continued as president until 1904, when she resigned.

In 1896 Miss Barton went to Armenia at the head of her Red Cross to relieve the suffering caused by the massacres. She saved thousands from starvation and disease.

Again she nobly responded to the call of President McKinley to go to the help of Cuba in the Spanish-American War.

Miss Bartón lived to see the Red Cross a world-wide society carrying comfort and cheer to all nations. In the World War after every great battle the Red Cross nurses worked on the field or in the hospital to lighten the awful sufferings of the wounded.

264. The Red Cross Society in times of peace. It was Miss Barton's firm belief that the world needed the services of the Red Cross in times of peace as well as in times of war. So an amendment was made to the Geneva treaty. Local Red Cross societies sprang up in every part of the country. The suffering which followed the great Charleston earthquake, the Galveston flood, forest fires, mine explosions, and all similar accidents found the Red Cross Society on hand with aid and supplies.

The greatest calamity that has befallen our country since the Red Cross was well organized, was the burning of San Francisco following the great earthquake of 1906.

Five hundred millions in property was destroyed, and two hundred and fifty thousand people were left homeless and without food. The Red Cross alone spent three million dollars in giving aid to the sufferers.

265. Jane Addams. There was still another great field of service waiting for a leader. Could the very poor be given a better



JANE ADDAMS
From a recent photograph

chance in life? This is a harder problem than it seems. Jane Addams knew it, but she set herself to work at it.

She had wealth and had never known want or hunger. But she was touched by the poverty and misery she saw around her. What could she do to make life better for these people?

In the poorer part of Chicago she secured a building and fitted it up for her work. She named it Hull House. Here she and her helpers welcomed all who came for advice or help. Here she showed them that she cared about them. Here she did all she could to make them healthier, better and happier. They were taught things they ought to know. They were made to feel that there can be a brotherhood among people of all classes and kinds.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. As a girl Elizabeth Cady Stanton became indignant at what she found to be the unequal position of women in almost every walk of life; she resolved to devote her life to the struggle for the rights of women. 2. In 1848 she called the first woman's rights convention, where she made the first public demand for woman suffrage. 3. She met Susan B. Anthony, a school teacher, and won her to the cause. 4. Together they organized the National Woman's Suffrage Association.

5. Frances E. Willard was raised in Wisconsin in frontier days. 6. In school she stood at the head of her class. 7. Joined the anti-saloon crusade; became president of the Woman's Christian Temperance Union and later of the National Union. 8. Declared herself in favor of woman suffrage. 9. As president of the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union, Miss Willard united the women of the world in a world union for the protection of the home.

10. Clara Barton took up the work of nursing after the first battles of the Civil War. 11. First in the hospitals of Washington, she finally went to the battle fields in order to give the wounded immediate help. 12. The Red Cross Society was founded in Europe; a branch was established in the United

States by Miss Barton. 13. Following the great earthquakes and fire in San Francisco in 1906, the Red Cross did heroic work in aiding the 250,000 people left homeless and without food.

14. Jane Addams while traveling in Europe was touched by the sight of the poverty and misery everywhere. 15. She determined to devote herself and her fortune to make better and brighter the lives of the poor. 16. She established the Hull House Social Settlement in Chicago.

Study Questions. 1. Who was the first to champion woman suffrage? 2. Describe Elizabeth Cady in her girlhood. What was her opinion of boys and girls? 3. To what did she determine to devote her life? 4. What was the purpose of the woman's rights convention? 5. What demand was first publicly made at this convention?

6. What was Miss Anthony's occupation before she met Mrs. Stanton? 7. Describe the work of these two women for

the cause of woman's rights.

8. Describe Frances Willard's girlhood, her home, and surroundings. 9. Why did Miss Willard take up temperance work? 10. Did Miss Willard work hard for temperance, woman's rights, and protection of the home? What makes you think so? 11. How did Miss Willard become of international influence?

wounded? 13. Where did she go then, and why? 14. Where was the Red Cross Society founded? 5. What was its purpose? 16. What great service does it perform in time of peace? 17. What was the result of the San Francisco earthquake? 18. How did the Red Cross relieve the distress?

19. How did the sight of poverty and suffering affect Jane Addams? 20. What did she determine to do? 21. What did she establish in Chicago? 22. What did the Social Settle-

ment accomplish? 23. Was it a success?

Suggested Readings. Wade, The Light Bringers, 64-111, 142-171; Adams, Heroines of Modern Progress.

ANDREW CARNEGIE

MAKER OF IRON AND STEEL AND FOUNDER OF LIBRARIES

266. A new chapter in our history. When our grand-fathers were boys, most of the people in the United States lived on their farms. But today things are different. We still have the farms, and the farmers on them, but we also have hundreds of factories of all kinds. Some of them are very large and thousands of men and women work in them.

One of the greatest of these new industries is the iron and steel business. It gives us the rails for our railroads, the bridges over our rivers, the ships in our harbors, the framework for the tall buildings in our cities, and machinery of every kind. How could we live today without these things? Yet this iron and steel business grew up within the lifetime of one man. That man was Andrew Carnegie. He started it. He guided its wonderful growth. He left it the greatest business in America.

267. A poor boy gets a start. Andrew Carnegie was a poor boy and had to make his own way. He was born in an attic room in a small town in Scotland. When he was twelve years old the family moved to America and settled in Pittsburgh. They had no money, but they were hard working and plucky. Andrew and his mother especially were full of hope.

All the family worked. Andrew's job kept him busy from daylight to dark. He got a dollar and twenty cents a week. It was not much, but he was happy. Was he not doing his share to support the family?

Then the telegraph company needed another boy, and Andrew began to carry their messages. In his spare minutes he watched the man at the key as he ticked off the words. He was a kind man and Andrew was an eager pupil. Soon he could work the key himself, and he became a telegrapher. He felt he was getting on.

268. Andrew becomes a railroad man. There was something about the young fellow that made men like him. One day he heard that Mr. Scott wanted him to

work in his office. Mr. Scott was a big railroad man in Pittsburgh. This was a great chance to learn railroading. So Andrew worked for him and with him. He sent his telegrams, acted as his secretary, and did everything he could find to do. He also picked up all the knowledge he could about running the trains.

Then suddenly his chance came. Early one morning there was a wreck on the road. The trains all stopped. The trainmen were waiting for orders. Mr. Scott could not be found. What should be done? Andrew thought hard. The trains ought to run. He felt sure



CARNEGIE AT SHIBO CASTLE
From Autobiography of Andrew Carnegie.
Courtesy of Houghton Mifflin Company

he knew how to clear up the tangle and what orders to give each train. He would do it.

In a moment he was at the key ticking out the orders.

The trains began to move. Would it all go smoothly? Anxiously he followed them by wire until all were running regularly again.

It was a great responsibility, but he had worked hard beforehand and was ready when his chance came. Is it surprising that when Mr. Scott was promoted a few years later, he put Andrew in his place?

269. A wide-awake young man. Andrew Carnegie always kept his eyes open. One day a stranger showed him a small model of a new kind of railway car. In it were places for beds so the passengers could sleep on the train at night. This was at that time a new idea, and it stayed in Carnegie's mind. Why should it not pay? Railroads were growing rapidly and people soon would be taking longer trips on them. So he organized a company to make sleeping cars. He succeeded, and later joined with others in the great Pullman Car Company.

The railroads then used wooden bridges. When these gave way or burned, the trains had to stop for days. Some one built a small iron bridge. Carnegie saw it. "That is the thing," he said to himself. "No more wooden bridges!" So he set to work to make iron bridges. One of his first big contracts was for a bridge over the Ohio river. Could he make it? Many men shook their heads. The president of the railroad came and looked at the heavy iron pieces. "The bridge won't hold up its own weight," he said. But Carnegie knew better. It stood then, and it is still standing and carrying trains over the river. The Carnegie Keystone Bridge Works soon had more orders than it could fill.

270. He became the steel king. They were soon making all kinds of things out of iron. The business grew

by leaps and bounds, but the biggest thing was yet to come. In England a man named Bessemer had found a

new way to turn the iron into steel. Carnegie was one of the first to see what this meant. If railway rails could be made of steel, who would buy iron rails? So he put all he had into a new company to make steel. They built a great plant on



CARNEGIE LIBRARY AT MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA From a photograph by H. P. Tresslar

the river at Pittsburgh. What a wonderful place it was! How the big furnaces glowed! How the sweat poured from the faces of the men who were toiling in the heat! What a noise as they rolled out steel rails, and mammoth girders for bridges and skyscrapers! Would it all pay? There were anxious moments when nobody could tell. But soon there was no more doubt. Steel manufacturing was a great success. Carnegie was head of the greatest business of that day. He was the American steel king.

271. Carnegie spent millions to help other people. Carnegie had a talent for making money. At one time he owned more than two hundred and fifty millions. But he won still greater fame by generously spending a large part of his wealth in ways which would bring about lasting public good.

When he was a telegraph boy a kind man lent him books to read every Saturday afternoon. How happy he was to get them! He then made up his mind that some day he would give other poor boys a chance to read and learn from books.

It was a fine idea and he never forgot it. When he grew rich, one of his greatest pleasures was building libraries so that anybody could get good books to read. He gave many millions of dollars for this purpose. The Carnegie libraries in many cities and towns are a noble monument to him.

He also gave freely to colleges and schools and to many other good causes. He loved work; he loved books; he loved music. He loved peace dearly, and hoped to see the end of wars. To help on the cause of peace he gave the world a magnificent Peace Palace at the Hague in Holland, where men could meet and settle peaceably their differences.

Will not such an idea some day in the future take the place of war?

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Andrew Carnegie was born in Scotland. 2. When he was twelve his family went to America, where Andrew soon started to work. 3. He learned telegraphy, and mastered the railroad business. 4. He organized companies to build sleeping coaches and steel bridges. 5. When Bessemer discovered a better way to make steel, Carnegie organized a great steel company, and finally became the American steel king. 6. Carnegie gave enormous sums for building libraries and for the cause of peace. 7. He gave the world the Peace Palace at the Hague in Holland.

Study Questions. 1. Was Carnegie the kind of boy who was likely to become famous? Why? 2. What experience

did he have in the railroad business? 3. What two new ventures did this lead him into? 4. What made possible the organizing of his great steel company? 5. Why were many of Carnegie's gifts to the public in the form of libraries? 6. What did he do to promote peace among nations?

Suggested Readings. Carnegie: Autobiography of Andrew Carnegie. Barnard Alderson, Andrew Carnegie, the Man and His Work

RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIES OF OUR COUNTRY

HOW FARM AND FACTORY HELPED BUILD THE NATION

- of whom you have read, lived and worked to make our country great and strong. But we have become a great country not merely because of great statesmen and soldiers like the heroes of this book. There have been many millions of men at work in field and forest, in mine and factory, who have contributed as much and more to the development of our land. These are the men who have cleared the farms, built the towns, laid the railroads, and made possible our large industries.
- 273. Cotton fields and cotton factories. Since the days of Eli Whitney cotton has been grown in all the southern states from Virginia westward to Texas, and from the Gulf of Mexico north to Missouri. More than one half of all the cotton in the world is grown in southern United States.

A field of growing cotton is very beautiful. Its care employs many laborers. The number of laborers needed, however, is not the same throughout the year. In the fall when the bolls ripen, all hands, large and small, turn to cotton picking. This work takes several months.

The picked cotton is put through a gin which still is built along the lines of Whitney's invention. The cleaned



cotton is pressed into large bales and then is ready for market.

The cotton seed goes to one mill, the cotton to another. For many years the seed was wasted. Farmers burned it or threw it away. But now in all parts of the South great mills crush the seed and make from it a valuable oil. What is left is cotton-

seed cake, and is bought eagerly by cattle growers everywhere.

Only a few years ago almost all the cotton grown in the South was shipped away to Europe or to New England. In Massachusetts and Rhode Island cotton mills employ more people than any other industry, and great cities are supported almost entirely by manufacturing cotton goods. Now the South has discovered that it can spin and weave its cotton at home. About many of its waterfalls is heard the hum of busy cotton mills. New cities are growing up, and prosperity has returned to the South.

274. The grain that feeds the nation. From the days of the early colonists, wheat has been one of the most valuable crops produced in this country. In the states east of the Mississippi River the farmers long have raised it in connection with a variety of other crops.

But as the newer lands west of this river were taken up, the settlers discovered that in that region wheat yielded more abundantly than any other crop. From Kansas northward to Minnesota and western Canada lies a broad stretch of land which has cool spring weather and a light rainfall. This is the climate best suited to wheat, and here has developed the great wheat belt of America.

In this region there are vast wheat fields almost everywhere, stretching farther than the eye can see over the level surface. Most of the farms are very large, some of them containing many thousands of acres. The work on these places is done with the most modern machines. Traction engines are used to pull the great plows, and in harvest time an army of binders reaps the golden grain.

With the aid of this machinery a few people can cultivate a great many acres. As a result, the country is thinly settled. The towns are few and far between. In most of them the principal building is the grain elevator, which holds the grain until it is ready to be shipped.

From the elevators the wheat goes to the flour mills. The largest of these are in Minneapolis, in the eastern part of the wheat belt. The flour in its turn goes to feed the many millions of people in all parts of the country, especially those who work in the great factories and commercial houses of the East.

For many years this country grew much more wheat than we needed, and we shipped great quantities to Europe. But each year our growing population needs more food, and our exports of this grain decrease steadily. Even now our farms grow but little more of this grain than is needed at home, and the time is almost at hand when we shall no longer send any of it abroad. 275. Cattle raising and meat packing. Cattle raising, like wheat farming, is an industry principally of the West. As late as 1850 the states which raised the most cattle lay along the Atlantic coast. But today Texas and Iowa are in the lead, and Illinois, Kansas, and Nebraska follow closely.

As the eastern states became peopled more densely, cattle grazing was forced west. The cattle pastures were broken up into fields. The prairies of Illinois and Iowa became a vast cornfield. Eastern Kansas and Nebraska were turned into corn and wheat farms. Always the cattle had to give way to the grain. At last the farmers came to a strip of country where the rainfall was not enough to make grain-growing profitable. This comparatively narrow strip stretches north in an irregular area of plains from western Texas to Montana. This region grows fine grass and has become the great grazing country of the United States. Here vast herds of cattle still roam on large ranches and are cared for by cowboys.

East of the ranch country lies the corn belt, in which Illinois and Iowa are the leading states. Cattle and hogs fatten better on corn than on any other foods, and the meat of corn-fed stock brings the best prices. The corn states therefore have taken up the raising and fattening of cattle and hogs on a tremendous scale. When western cattle leave the ranch they are generally not very heavy. Thousands of carloads are shipped into the corn country each year, there to be fattened before going to the packing houses. Cattle raising has been greatly helped by the fight made against the cattle ticks. The raising of corn has been encouraged by the boys' corn clubs.

The largest meat-packing plants are located in the corn belt at Chicago, Kansas City, Omaha, and other cities. Today meat packing is the greatest business of Chicago and many other large cities. A generation ago it scarcely had begun. But the packers learned to can meats, and to use ice for cold storage. Most important of all, the refrigerator car was invented. This last discovery enabled them to ship meat almost everywhere. Where before they had to sell their goods at home, now they have the world as a market. A steer raised on the western prairies may now be fattened for market in Illinois, slaughtered in her largest city, Chicago, and served in New York, or sent to England or even to the Orient.

MINES, MINING, AND MANUFACTURES

276. Coal and iron. Next to the great farm crops, coal and iron are the most valuable products of our country. The coal that is mined in one year is worth five times as much as the gold and silver combined. Our iron mines yield as much wealth in one year as the gold mines do in three. Gold and silver are luxuries without which we could get along, but our great factories, railroads, and steamship lines could not exist without an abundance of iron and coal.

A hundred years ago there was almost no coal mined in this country. Now we use more of it than any other land, and fully a million men make a living by mining it. At first most of the coal produced was the hard anthracite of eastern Pennsylvania. But this hard coal is found only in one small part of Pennsylvania, whereas great beds of soft coal stretch from Pennsylvania west

to Washington. At present there is far more soft coal used than anthracite. Pennsylvania is the leading state in the production of both hard and soft coal, but West Virginia, Illinois, Ohio, and several Southern states are also great coal producers. Generally where there are coal mines, factories have been built, because most of them need a great deal of coal for fuel.

Iron was worked first by the colonists in the bogs of New England. Iron mining, however, did not become a great industry until the latter part of the last century. In that period the great iron "ranges" of Lake Superior were opened up. These are the largest deposits of iron ore in the world. Most of the ore lies in Minnesota. Here, far up in the northern woods, thousands of men are blasting or digging out the red and rusty ore. Huge steam-shovels load a car in a few minutes, and in a short time a trainload of ore is on its way to Duluth or Superior. From there it is carried by steamer east, most likely to one of the Ohio towns on Lake Erie. Here much of the ore again is loaded into cars and hauled to the Pittsburgh region, there to be smelted.

Pittsburgh has become the greatest iron and steel center of America. Enormous quantities of coal are mined near here and used for smelting the iron ore that is shipped in. In western Pennsylvania, eastern Ohio, and northern Alabama, more than anywhere else in America, people make a living by mining coal and making steel and iron. Great blast furnaces melt the iron ore. Steel works turn out huge quantities of rail and sheet steel. Foundries make cast-iron products of all kinds. Vast shops are busily engaged in producing locomotives and machines of endless variety. Everywhere in this

region are smoking chimneys and busy industrial plants, all supported by coal and iron.

Some of the Southern states also contain rich deposits of coal and of iron. Birmingham, Alabama, is already one of the great coal and iron centers of the world. It has some advantages over Pittsburgh.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Toilers in field, forest, mine, and factory contributed to the development of our land. 2. Cotton is grown in all the southern states as far west as Texas. 3. A valuable oil is made from the cotton seed. 4. The climate west of the Mississippi is best suited to raising wheat. 5. The work of cultivating and harvesting is done by machines. 6. Wheat is sent to the flour mills, the largest of which are in Minneapolis. 7. Exports of wheat decreasing. 8. Texas and Iowa the leading cattle-raising states. g. Cattle and hogs from the ranches are fed on corn in the corn states, principally Iowa and Illinois. 10. The refrigerator car permits the shipment of meat to all the world. II. The coal and iron mined in America worth many times more than the gold and silver. 12. Hard coal mined in Pennsylvania. 13. The Lake Superior iron ranges the greatest in the world. 14. Pittsburgh is the greatest iron and steel center of America. 15. Some of the Southern states contain rich deposits of coal and iron. 16. Birmingham, Alabama, is a great coal and iron center.

Study Questions. 1. Describe the process of preparing cotton for the market. 2. What is done with the cotton seed? 3. What is the South preparing to do with the cotton crop? 4. Where is the wheat belt of America? 5. How is the wheat cultivated and harvested? 6. Describe the process by which wheat is prepared for use as food. 7. What are the leading cattle-raising states? 8. Where and how are the herds fattened? 9. What was the effect of the invention of the refrigerator car? 10. How does the value of coal and iron mined in America compare with that of gold and silver? 11. Where is anthracite coal mined? 12. Where was iron first mined? 13. Where is the largest deposit in the world? 14. Where is the great iron and steel center of America? 15. Tell

of some of the things for which iron is used. 16. What city in the South is a great coal and iron center?

Suggested Readings Industries: Fairbanks: The Western United States, 215–290; Brooks, The Story of Cotton; Shillig, The Four Wonders (Cotton, Wool, Linen, and Silk); Brooks, The Story of Corn.











Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide Treatment Date: April 2010

Preservation Technologies A WORLD LEADER IN COLLECTIONS PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive Cranberry Township, PA 16066 (724) 779-2111



